<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Contact Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Charles Conner, RA</td>
<td>Architect</td>
<td>919-838-5104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hager Smith Design</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300 South Dawson Street</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raleigh, NC 27601</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gary Embler</td>
<td>Home Builder</td>
<td>704-361-7720</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niblock Homes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>759 Concord Pkwy N, Ste. 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concord, NC 28057</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ralph Euchner</td>
<td>Gas Industry</td>
<td>704-810-3331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSNC Energy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO Box 1398</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastonia, NC 28053</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keith Hamilton</td>
<td>Mechanical Contractor</td>
<td>919-926-1475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element Service Group</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7414 Almaden Way</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cary, NC 27518</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wayne Hamilton</td>
<td>Fire Services</td>
<td>828-658-3911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buncombe County</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270 Upper Herron Cove Road</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaverville, NC 28787</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scott Eubank</td>
<td>Plumbing Code</td>
<td>919-851-4422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tony Sears</td>
<td>Public Representative</td>
<td>252-939-3111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bridget Herring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Public Representative)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy Program Coordinator</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO Box 7148</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asheville, NC 28802</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leon Skinner</td>
<td>Building Inspector</td>
<td>919-996-2455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tony Sears</td>
<td>(Municipal Representative)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinston</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO Drawer 339</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinston, NC 28502</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eric Tjalma</td>
<td>State Agency</td>
<td>910-681-0394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Electrical Contractor)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO Box 1121</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilot Mountain, NC 27041</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keith Rogers, PE</td>
<td>Mechanical Engineer</td>
<td>828-559-5397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Mechanical Engineer)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bass, Nixon and Kennedy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6310 Chapel Hill Road, Ste. 250</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raleigh, NC 27612</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wade White</td>
<td>(Electrical Engineer)</td>
<td>336-351-3781</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Electrical Engineer)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brite Engineering</td>
<td>2001 Old Westfield Road</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raleigh, NC 27601</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chair:** Robbie Davis — 21
(General Contractor)
Turn-Key Contractors
5998 Dorches Boulevard
Rocky Mount, NC 27804
252-977-6680

**Vice Chair:**
Daniel Priest, RA — 22
(Contractor)
Priest Architecture
PO Box 5295
Charlottesville, NC 28299
704-379-1810
By Statute, the Commissioner of Insurance has general supervision of the administration and enforcement of the North Carolina State Building Code and the Engineering Division serves as the Staff for the Building Code Council. Officials of the Department of Insurance are:

MIKE CAUSEY
Commissioner

BRIAN TAYLOR
Senior Deputy Commissioner

CLIFF ISAAC, PE
Deputy Commissioner

BARRY GUPTON, PE
Chief Code Consultant

BILL MOELLER, PE
Chief Plumbing Code Consultant

COMMITTEES OF THE COUNCIL
DECEMBER 12, 2017

ADMINISTRATION
Robbie Davis — Chair
Daniel Priest, RA - Vice Chair
Ralph Euchner
Wayne Hamilton
Steve Knight, PE
Keith Rogers, PE
Leon Skinner
David Smith
Wade White, PE

ENERGY
Ralph Euchner — Chair
Charles Conner, RA
Steve Knight, PE
Frankie Meads
Bridget Herring
Tony Sears
David Smith
Eric Tjalma, RA

MECHANICAL
Keith Rogers, PE — Chair
Ralph Euchner
Keith Hamilton
Bridget Herring
Robert Morrow
David Smith
Eric Tjalma, RA
Wade White, PE

BUILDING
Daniel Priest, RA — Chair
Charles Conner, RA
Wayne Hamilton
Steve Knight, PE
Tony Sears
Leon Skinner
Eric Tjalma, RA

EXISTING BUILDING
Leon Skinner — Chair
Keith Hamilton
Wayne Hamilton
Steve Knight, PE
Robert Morrow
Daniel Priest, RA
Wade White, PE

RESIDENTIAL
David Smith — Chair
Charles Conner, RA
Ralph Euchner
Keith Hamilton
Steve Knight, PE
Frankie Meads
Robert Morrow
Leon Skinner

ELECTRICAL
Wade White, PE — Chair
Ralph Euchner
Bridget Herring
Robert Morrow
Daniel Priest, RA
Keith Rogers, PE

FIRE PREVENTION
Wayne Hamilton — Chair
Charles Conner, RA
Ralph Euchner
Daniel Priest, RA
Leon Skinner
Wade White, PE

STRUCTURAL
Steve Knight, PE — Chair
Frankie Meads
Daniel Priest, RA
Keith Rogers, PE
Tony Sears
Leon Skinner
Eric Tjalma, RA
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS
North Carolina Building Code Council
Plumbing Ad-Hoc Committee

CHAIR
Keith Rogers, PE
Bass, Nixon and Kennedy
6310 Chapel Hill Road, Ste. 250
Raleigh, NC 27612

Al Bass, Jr., PE
Bass, Nixon and Kennedy
6425 Chapman Court
Raleigh, NC 27612

Elbert Hill, Jr
American Plumbing
3716 Auburn Church Road
Garner, NC 27529

Ken Keplar
Wake County
336 Fayetteville Street
Raleigh, NC 27601

Jim Lawson
City of High Point
211 South Hamilton Street
High Point, NC 27261

Bill Moeller, PE
NC Department of Insurance
Albemarle Building
Raleigh, NC 27603

Paula Strickland
Williams PH&AC
1051 Grecade Street
Greensboro, NC 27408
PREFACE

Introduction

Internationally, code officials recognize the need for a modern, up-to-date plumbing code addressing the design and installation of plumbing systems through requirements emphasizing performance. The International Plumbing Code®, in this 2015 edition, is designed to meet these needs through model code regulations that safeguard the public health and safety in all communities, large and small.


The International Plumbing Code provisions provide many benefits, among which is the model code development process that offers an international forum for plumbing professionals to discuss performance and prescriptive code requirements. This forum provides an excellent arena to debate proposed revisions. This model code also encourages international consistency in the application of provisions.

Development

The first edition of the International Plumbing Code (1995) was the culmination of an effort initiated in 1994 by a development committee appointed by the ICC and consisting of representatives of the three statutory members of the International Code Council at that time, including: Building Officials and Code Administrators International, Inc. (BOCA), International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO) and Southern Building Code Congress International (SBCCI). The intent was to draft a comprehensive set of regulations for plumbing systems consistent with and inclusive of the scope of the existing model codes. Technical content of the latest model codes promulgated by BOCA, ICBO and SBCCI was utilized as the basis for the development. This 2015 edition presents the code as originally issued, with changes as reflected in the subsequent editions through 2012 and with changes approved through the ICC Code Development Process through 2013 (completion of Group B). A new edition such as this is promulgated every 3 years.

This code is founded on principles intended to establish provisions consistent with the scope of a plumbing code that adequately protects public health, safety and welfare; provisions that do not unnecessarily increase construction costs; provisions that do not restrict the use of new materials, products or methods of construction; and provisions that do not give preferential treatment to particular types or classes of materials, products or methods of construction.

Adoption

The International Code Council maintains a copyright in all of its codes and standards. Maintaining copyright allows ICC to fund its mission through sales of books, in both print and electronic formats. The International Plumbing Code is designed for adoption and use by jurisdictions that recognize and acknowledge the ICC’s copyright in the code, and further acknowledge the substantial shared value of the public/private partnership for code development between jurisdictions and the ICC.

The ICC also recognizes the need for jurisdictions to make laws available to the public. All ICC codes and ICC standards, along with the laws of many jurisdictions, are available for free in a non-downloadable form on the ICC’s website. Jurisdictions should contact the ICC at adoptions@icc safe.org to learn how to adopt and distribute laws based on the International Plumbing Code in a manner that provides necessary access, while maintaining the ICC’s copyright.
Maintenance

The *International Plumbing Code* is kept up to date through the review of proposed changes submitted by code enforcing officials, industry representatives, design professionals and other interested parties. Proposed changes are carefully considered through an open code development process in which all interested and affected parties may participate.

The contents of this work are subject to change through both the Code Development Cycles and the governmental body that enacts the code into law. For more information regarding the code development process, contact the Codes and Standards Development Department of the International Code Council.

While the development procedure of the *International Plumbing Code* ensures the highest degree of care, the ICC, its members and those participating in the development of this code do not accept any liability resulting from compliance or noncompliance with the provisions because the ICC does not have the power or authority to police or enforce compliance with the contents of this code. Only the governmental body that enacts the code into law has such authority.

**Code Development Committee Responsibilities**

*(Letter Designations in Front of Section Numbers)*

In each code development cycle, proposed changes to the code are considered at the Committee Action Hearings by the International Plumbing Code Development Committee, whose action constitutes a recommendation to the voting membership for final action on the proposed change. Proposed changes to a code section that has a number beginning with a letter in brackets are considered by a different code development committee. For example, proposed changes to code sections that have [BS] in front of them (e.g., [BS] 309.2) are considered by the IBC – Structural Code Development Committee at the code development hearings.

**Marginal and Text Markings**

Solid vertical lines in the margins within the body of the code indicate a technical change from the requirements of the 2012 edition. Deletion indicators in the form of an arrow (→) are provided in the margin where an entire section, paragraph, exception or table has been deleted or an item in a list of items or a table has been deleted. Underlining within the body of the code indicate a technical change to the *2018 North Carolina Plumbing Code* from the requirements of the 2015 edition of the *International Plumbing Code*.

A single asterisk [*] placed in the margin indicates that text or a table has been relocated within the code. A double asterisk [**] placed in the margin indicates that the text or table immediately following it has been relocated there from elsewhere in the code. The following table indicates such relocations in the 2015 edition of the *International Plumbing Code*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2015 LOCATION</th>
<th>2012 LOCATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Appendix C</td>
<td>Appendix F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 716</td>
<td>Appendix C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Italicized Terms**

Selected terms set forth in Chapter 2, Definitions, are italicized where they appear in code text. Such terms are not italicized where the definition set forth in Chapter 2 does not impart the intended meaning in the use of the term. The terms selected have definitions that the user should read carefully to facilitate better understanding of the code.
EFFECTIVE USE OF THE INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE

The *International Plumbing Code* (IPC) is a model code that regulates the design and installation of plumbing systems including the plumbing fixtures in all types of buildings except for detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses that are not more than three stories above grade in height. The regulations for plumbing systems in one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses are covered by Chapters 25 through 33 of the *International Residential Code* (IRC). The IPC addresses general plumbing regulations, fixture requirements, water heater installations and systems for water distribution, sanitary drainage, special wastes, venting, storm drainage and medical gases. The IPC does not address fuel gas piping systems as those systems are covered by the *International Fuel Gas Code* (IFGC). The IPC also does not regulate swimming pool piping systems, process piping systems, or utility-owned piping and systems. The purpose of the IPC is to establish the minimum acceptable level of safety to protect life and property from the potential dangers associated with supplying potable water to plumbing fixtures and outlets and the conveyance of bacteria-laden waste water from fixtures.

The IPC is primarily a specification-oriented (prescriptive) code with some performance-oriented text. For example, Section 405.1 is a performance statement but Chapter 6 contains the prescriptive requirements that will cause Section 405.1 to be satisfied.

Where a building contains plumbing fixtures, those fixtures requiring water must be provided with an adequate supply of water for proper operation. The number of required plumbing fixtures for a building is specified by this code and is based upon the anticipated maximum number of occupants for the building and the type of building occupancy. This code provides prescriptive criteria for sizing piping systems connected to those fixtures. Through the use of code-approved materials and the installation requirements specified in this code, plumbing systems will perform their intended function over the life of the building. In summary, the IPC sets forth the minimum requirements for providing safe water to a building as well as a safe manner in which liquid-borne wastes are carried away from a building.

Arrangement and Format of the 2015 IPC

The format of the IPC allows each chapter to be devoted to a particular subject with the exception of Chapter 3 which contains general subject matters that are not extensive enough to warrant their own independent chapter. The IPC is divided into 14 different parts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapters</th>
<th>Subjects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>Administration and Definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>General Regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Fixtures, Faucets and Fixture Fittings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Water Heaters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Water Supply and Distribution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Sanitary Drainage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Indirect/Special Waste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Vents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Traps, Interceptors and Separators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Storm Drainage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Special Piping (Medical Gas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Nonpotable Water Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Subsurface Landscape Irrigation Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Referenced Standards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendices A-E</td>
<td>Appendices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following is a chapter-by-chapter synopsis of the scope and intent of the provisions of the **International Plumbing Code**:

**Chapter 1 Scope and Administration.** This chapter contains provisions for the application, enforcement and administration of subsequent requirements of the code. In addition to establishing the scope of the code, Chapter 1 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview. Chapter 1 is largely concerned with maintaining “due process of law” in enforcing the requirements contained in the body of this code. Only through careful observation of the administrative provisions can the code official reasonably expect to demonstrate that “equal protection under the law” has been provided.

**Chapter 2 Definitions.** Chapter 2 is the repository of the definitions of terms used in the body of the code. Codes are technical documents and every word, term and punctuation mark can impact the meaning of the code text and the intended results. The code often uses terms that have a unique meaning in the code and the code meaning can differ substantially from the ordinarily understood meaning of the term as used outside of the code.

The terms defined in Chapter 2 are deemed to be of prime importance in establishing the meaning and intent of the code text that uses the terms. The user of the code should be familiar with and consult this chapter because the definitions are essential to the correct interpretation of the code and because the user may not be aware that a term is defined.

Where understanding of a term’s definition is especially key to or necessary for understanding of a particular code provision, the term is shown in *italics* wherever it appears in the code. This is true only for those terms that have a meaning that is unique to the code. In other words, the generally understood meaning of a term or phrase might not be sufficient or consistent with the meaning prescribed by the code; therefore, it is essential that the code-defined meaning be known.

Guidance regarding tense, gender and plurality of defined terms as well as guidance regarding terms not defined in this code is provided.

**Chapter 3 General Regulations.** The content of Chapter 3 is often referred to as “miscellaneous,” rather than general regulations. This is the only chapter in the code whose requirements do not interrelate. If a requirement cannot be located in another chapter, it should be located in this chapter. Chapter 3 contains safety requirements for the installation of plumbing and nonplumbing requirements for all types of fixtures. This chapter also has requirements for the identification of pipe, pipe fittings, traps, fixtures, materials and devices used in plumbing systems.

The safety requirements of this chapter provide protection for the building’s structural members, as well as prevent undue stress and strain on pipes. The building’s structural stability is protected by the regulations for cutting and notching of structural members. Additional protection for the building occupants includes requirements to maintain the plumbing in a safe and sanitary condition, as well as privacy for those occupants.

**Chapter 4 Fixtures, Faucets and Fixture Fittings.** This chapter regulates the minimum number of plumbing fixtures that must be provided for every type of building. This chapter also regulates the quality of fixtures and faucets by requiring those items to comply with nationally recognized standards. Because fixtures must be properly installed so that they are usable by the occupants of the building, this chapter contains the requirements for the installation of fixtures. Because the requirements for the number of plumbing fixtures affects the design of a building, Chapter 29 of the *International Building Code* (IBC) includes, verbatim, many of the requirements listed in Chapter 4 of this code.

**Chapter 5 Water Heaters.** Chapter 5 regulates the design, approval and installation of water heaters and related safety devices. The intent is to minimize the hazards associated with the installation and operation of water heaters. Although this code does not regulate the size of a water heater, it does regulate all other aspects of the water heater installation such as temperature and pressure relief valves, safety drip pans, installation and connections. Where a water heater also supplies water for space heating, this chapter regulates the maximum water temperature supplied to the water distribution system.
Chapter 6 Water Supply and Distribution. This chapter regulates the supply of potable water from both public and individual sources to every fixture and outlet so that it remains potable and uncontaminated. Chapter 6 also regulates the design of the water distribution system, which will allow fixtures to function properly and also help prevent backflow conditions. The unique requirements of the water supply for health care facilities are addressed separately. It is critical that the potable water supply system remain free of actual or potential sanitary hazards by providing protection against backflow.

Chapter 7 Sanitary Drainage. The purpose of Chapter 7 is to regulate the materials, design and installation of sanitary drainage piping systems as well as the connections made to the system. The intent is to design and install sanitary drainage systems that will function reliably, that are neither undersized nor oversized and that are constructed from materials, fittings and connections as prescribed herein. This chapter addresses the proper use of fittings for directing the flow into and within the sanitary drain piping system. Materials and provisions necessary for servicing the drainage system are also included in this chapter.

Chapter 8 Indirect/Special Waste. This chapter regulates drainage installations that require an indirect connection to the sanitary drainage system. Fixtures and plumbing appliances, such as those associated with food preparation or handling, health care facilities and potable liquids, must be protected from contamination that can result from connection to the drainage system. An indirect connection prevents sewage from backing up into a fixture or appliance, thus providing protection against potential health hazards. The chapter also regulates special wastes containing hazardous chemicals. Special waste must be treated to prevent any damage to the sanitary drainage piping and to protect the sewage treatment processes.

Chapter 9 Vents. Chapter 9 covers the requirements for vents and venting. Knowing why venting is required makes it easier to understand the intent of this chapter. Venting protects every trap against the loss of its seal. Provisions set forth in this chapter are geared toward limiting the pressure differentials in the drainage system to a maximum of 1 inch of water column (249 Pa) above or below atmospheric pressure (i.e., positive or negative pressures).

Chapter 10 Traps, Interceptors and Separators. This chapter contains design requirements and installation limitations for traps. Prohibited types of traps are specifically identified. Where fixtures do not frequently replenish the water in traps, a method is provided to ensure that the water seal of the trap will be maintained. Requirements for the design and location of various types of interceptors and separators are provided. Specific venting requirements are given for separators and interceptors as those requirements are not addressed in Chapter 9.

Chapter 11 Storm Drainage. Chapter 11 regulates the removal of storm water typically associated with rainfall. The proper installation of a storm drainage system reduces the possibility of structural collapse of a flat roof, prevents the leakage of water through the roof, prevents damage to the footings and foundation of the building and prevents flooding of the lower levels of the building.

Chapter 12 Special Piping and Storage Systems. Deleted.

Chapter 13 Nonpotable Water Systems. This chapter regulates the design and installation of nonpotable water systems. The reduction of the use of potable water in buildings has led to designers of buildings in some jurisdictions to use nonpotable water for irrigation and flushing of water closets and urinals. As such, this chapter provides the overall requirements for these systems.

Chapter 14 Subsurface Landscape Irrigation Systems. Deleted.

Chapter 15 Referenced Standards. Chapter 15 contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in the code. The standards are part of the code to the extent of the reference to the standard. Compliance with the referenced standard is necessary for compliance with this code. By providing specifically adopted standards, the construction and installation requirements necessary for compliance with the code can be readily determined. The basis for code compliance is, therefore, established and available on an equal basis to the code official, contractor, designer and owner.
Chapter 15 is organized in a manner that makes it easy to locate specific standards. It lists all of the referenced standards, alphabetically, by acronym of the promulgating agency of the standard. Each agency’s standards are then listed in either alphabetical or numeric order based upon the standard identification. The list also contains the title of the standard; the edition (date) of the standard referenced; any addenda included as part of the ICC adoption; and the section or sections of this code that reference the standard.

**Appendix A Plumbing Permit Fee Schedule.** Deleted.

**Appendix B Rates of Rainfall for Various Cities.** Deleted.

**Appendix C Structural Safety.** Appendix C is provided so that the user does not have to refer to another code book for limitations for cutting, notching and boring of sawn lumber and cold-formed steel framing.

**Appendix D Degree Day and Design Temperatures.** Deleted.

**Appendix E Sizing of Water Piping System.** Appendix E provides two recognized methods for sizing the water service and water distribution piping for any structure. The method under Section E103 provides friction loss diagrams which require the user to “plot” points and read values from the diagrams in order to perform the required calculations and necessary checks. This method is the most accurate of the two presented in this appendix. The method under Section E201 is known to be conservative; however, very few calculations are necessary in order to determine a pipe size that satisfies the flow requirements of any application.
Jurisdictions wishing to adopt the 2015 *International Plumbing Code* as an enforceable regulation governing plumbing systems should ensure that certain factual information is included in the adopting legislation at the time adoption is being considered by the appropriate governmental body. The following sample adoption legislation addresses several key elements, including the information required for insertion into the code text.

**SAMPLE LEGISLATION FOR ADOPTION OF THE INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE**

**ORDINANCE NO._____**

A[N] [ORDINANCE/STATUTE/REGULATION] of the [JURISDICTION] adopting the 2015 edition of the *International Plumbing Code*, regulating and governing the design, construction, quality of materials, erection, installation, alteration, repair, location, relocation, replacement, addition to, use or maintenance of plumbing systems in the [JURISDICTION]; providing for the issuance of permits and collection of fees therefor; repealing [ORDINANCE/STATUTE/REGULATION] No. _____ of the [JURISDICTION] and all other ordinances or parts of laws in conflict therewith.

The [GOVERNING BODY] of the [JURISDICTION] does ordain as follows:

**Section 1.** That a certain document, three (3) copies of which are on file in the office of the [TITLE OF JURISDICTION'S KEEPER OF RECORDS] of [NAME OF JURISDICTION], being marked and designated as the *International Plumbing Code*, 2015 edition, including Appendix Chapters [FILL IN THE APPENDIX CHAPTERS BEING ADOPTED], as published by the International Code Council, be and is hereby adopted as the Plumbing Code of the [JURISDICTION], in the State of [STATE NAME] regulating and governing the design, construction, quality of materials, erection, installation, alteration, repair, location, relocation, replacement, addition to, use or maintenance of plumbing systems as herein provided; providing for the issuance of permits and collection of fees therefor; and each and all of the regulations, provisions, penalties, conditions and terms of said Plumbing Code on file in the office of the [JURISDICTION] are hereby referred to, adopted, and made a part hereof, as if fully set out in this legislation, with the additions, insertions, deletions and changes, if any, prescribed in Section 2 of this ordinance.

**Section 2.** The following sections are hereby revised:

- Section 101.1. Insert: [NAME OF JURISDICTION]
- Section 106.6.2. Insert: [APPROPRIATE SCHEDULE]
- Section 106.6.3. Insert: [PERCENTAGES IN TWO LOCATIONS]
- Section 108.4. Insert: [OFFENSE, DOLLAR AMOUNT, NUMBER OF DAYS]
- Section 108.5. Insert: [DOLLAR AMOUNT IN TWO LOCATIONS]
- Section 305.4.1. Insert: [NUMBER OF INCHES IN TWO LOCATIONS]
- Section 903.1. Insert: [NUMBER OF INCHES]

**Section 3.** That [ORDINANCE/STATUTE/REGULATION] No. _____ of [JURISDICTION] entitled [FILL IN HERE THE COMPLETE TITLE OF THE LEGISLATION OR LAWS IN EFFECT AT THE PRESENT TIME SO THAT THEY WILL BE REPEALED BY DEFINITE MENTION] and all other ordinances or parts of laws in conflict herewith are hereby repealed.

**Section 4.** That if any section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this legislation is, for any reason, held to be unconstitutional, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of this ordinance. The [GOVERNING BODY] hereby declares that it would have passed this law, and each section, subsection, clause or phrase thereof, irrespective of the fact that any one or more sections, subsections, sentences, clauses and phrases be declared unconstitutional.

**Section 5.** That nothing in this legislation or in the Plumbing Code hereby adopted shall be construed to affect any suit or proceeding pending in any court, or any rights acquired, or liability incurred, or any cause or causes of action acquired or existing, under any act or ordinance hereby repealed as cited in Section 3 of this law; nor shall any just or legal right or remedy of any character be lost, impaired or affected by this legislation.

**Section 6.** That the [JURISDICTION'S KEEPER OF RECORDS] is hereby ordered and directed to cause this legislation to be published. (An additional provision may be required to direct the number of times the legislation is to be published and to specify that it is to be in a newspaper in general circulation. Posting may also be required.)
Section 7. That this law and the rules, regulations, provisions, requirements, orders and matters established and adopted hereby shall take effect and be in full force and effect \[\text{TIME PERIOD}\] from and after the date of its final passage and adoption.
CHAPTER 1
SCOPe AND ADMINISTRATION

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION 101
GENERAL

[A] 101.1 Title. These regulations shall be known as the North Carolina Plumbing Code as adopted by the North Carolina Building Code Council on June 13, 2017, to be effective January 1, 2019. References to the International Codes shall mean the North Carolina Codes. The North Carolina amendments to the International Codes are underlined.

[A] 101.2 Scope. The provisions of this code shall apply to the erection, installation, alteration, repairs, relocation, replacement, addition to, use or maintenance of plumbing systems within North Carolina. This code shall regulate sanitary and vacuum collection systems. The installation of fuel gas distribution piping and equipment, fuel-gas-fired water heaters and water heater venting systems shall be regulated by the International Fuel Gas Code. Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

Exception: Detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) not more than three stories high with separate means of egress and their accessory structures shall comply with the International Residential Code.

[A] 101.3 Intent. The purpose of this code is to establish minimum standards to provide a reasonable level of safety, health, property protection and public welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location, operation and maintenance or use of plumbing equipment and systems.

[A] 101.4 Severability. If any section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this code is for any reason held to be illegal or void, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of this code.

R101.5 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance adopted or referenced in this code.

101.6 Requirements of other State agencies, occupational licensing board or commissions. The North Carolina State Building Codes do not include all additional requirements for buildings and structures that may be imposed by other State agencies, occupational licensing boards and commissions. It shall be the responsibility of a permit holder, design professional, contractor or occupational license holder to determine whether any additional requirements exist.

SECTION 102
APPLICABILITY

[A] 102.1 General. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern.

[A] 102.2 Existing installations. Plumbing systems lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code shall be permitted to have their use and maintenance continued if the use, maintenance or repair is in accordance with the original design and hazard to life, health, or property is not created by such plumbing system.

[A] 102.3 Maintenance. Plumbing systems, materials and appurtenances, both existing and new, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design in a safe and sanitary condition. All devices or safeguards required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the edition of the code under which they were installed.

The owner or the owner’s authorized agent shall be responsible for maintenance of plumbing systems. To determine compliance with this provision, the code official shall have the authority to require any plumbing system to be reinspected.

[A] 102.4 Additions, alterations or repairs. Additions, alterations, renovations or repairs to any plumbing system shall conform to that required for a new plumbing system without requiring the existing plumbing system to comply with all the requirements of this code. Additions, alterations or repairs shall not cause an existing system to become unsafe, insanitary or overloaded.

Minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing plumbing systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous and is approved.

[A] 102.5 Change in occupancy. It shall be unlawful to make any change in the occupancy of any structure that will subject the structure to any special provision of this code applicable to the new occupancy without approval of the code official. The code official shall certify that such structure meets the intent of the provisions of law governing building construction for the proposed new occupancy and that such change of occupancy does not result in any hazard to the public health, safety or welfare.

[A] 102.6 Historic buildings. The provisions of this code relating to the construction, alteration, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings or structures shall not be mandatory for existing buildings or structures identified and classified by the state or local jurisdiction as historic buildings where such buildings or structures are judged by the code official to be safe and in the public interest of health, safety and welfare regarding any proposed construction, alteration, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings.
PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

SECTION 103
DEPARTMENT OF PLUMBING INSPECTION

Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

SECTION 104
DUTIES AND POWERS OF THE CODE OFFICIAL

Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

SECTION 105
APPROVAL

[A] 105.1 Modifications. Where there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of this code, the code official shall have the authority to grant modifications for individual cases, upon application of the owner or owner’s authorized agent, provided the code official shall first find that special individual reason makes the strict letter of this code impractical and the modification conforms to the intent and purpose of this code and that such modification does not lessen health, life and fire safety requirements. The details of action granting modifications shall be recorded and entered in the files of the plumbing inspection department.

[A] 105.2 Alternative materials, methods and equipment. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been approved. An alternative material or method of construction shall be approved where the code official finds that the proposed alternative material, method or equipment complies with the intent of the provisions of this code and is not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not approved, the code official shall respond in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not approved.

[A] 105.2.1 Research reports. Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from approved sources.

[A] 105.3 Required testing. Where there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this code, or evidence that a material or method does not conform to the requirements of this code, or in order to substantiate claims for alternate materials or methods, the code official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made at no expense to the jurisdiction.

[A] 105.3.1 Test methods. Test methods shall be as specified in this code or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the code official shall approve the testing procedures.

[A] 105.3.2 Testing agency. Tests shall be performed by an approved agency.

[A] 105.3.3 Test reports. Reports of tests shall be retained by the code official for the period required for retention of public records.

105.4 Alternative engineered design. The design, documentation, inspection, testing and approval of an alternative engineered design plumbing system shall comply with Sections 105.4.1 through 105.4.6.

105.4.1 Design criteria. An alternative engineered design shall conform to the intent of the provisions of this code and shall provide an equivalent level of quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Material, equipment or components shall be designed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

105.4.2 Submittal. The registered design professional shall indicate on the permit application that the plumbing system is an alternative engineered design. The permit and permanent permit records shall indicate that an alter-
native engineered design was part of the approved installation.

**105.4.3 Technical data.** The registered design professional shall submit sufficient technical data to substantiate the proposed alternative engineered design and to prove that the performance meets the intent of this code.

**105.4.4 Construction documents.** The registered design professional shall submit to the code official two complete sets of signed and sealed construction documents for the alternative engineered design. The construction documents shall include floor plans and a riser diagram of the work. Where appropriate, the construction documents shall indicate the direction of flow, all pipe sizes, grade of horizontal piping, loading, and location of fixtures and appliances.

**105.4.5 Design approval.** Where the code official determines that the alternative engineered design conforms to the intent of this code, the plumbing system shall be approved. If the alternative engineered design is not approved, the code official shall notify the registered design professional in writing, stating the reasons thereof.

**105.4.6 Inspection and testing.** The alternative engineered design shall be tested and inspected in accordance with the requirements of the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

[A] **105.5 Approved materials and equipment.** Materials, equipment and devices approved by the code official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.

[A] **105.5.1 Material and equipment reuse.** Materials, equipment and devices shall not be reused unless such elements have been reconditioned, tested, placed in good and proper working condition and approved.

**SECTION 110 TEMPORARY EQUIPMENT, SYSTEMS AND USES**

[A] **110.1 General.** The code official is authorized to issue a permit for temporary equipment, systems and uses. Such permits shall be limited as to time of service, but shall not be permitted for more than 180 days. The code official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause.

[A] **110.2 Conformance.** Temporary equipment, systems and uses shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to ensure the public health, safety and general welfare.

[A] **110.3 Temporary utilities.** The code official is authorized to give permission to temporarily supply utilities before an installation has been fully completed and the final certificate of completion has been issued. The part covered by the temporary certificate shall comply with the requirements specified for temporary lighting, heat or power in the code.

[A] **110.4 Termination of approval.** The code official is authorized to terminate such permit for temporary equipment, systems or uses and to order the temporary equipment, systems or uses to be discontinued.

**SECTION 106 PERMITS**

Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

**SECTION 107 INSPECTIONS AND TESTING**

Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

**SECTION 108 VIOLATIONS**

Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

**SECTION 109 MEANS OF APPEAL**

Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.
CHAPTER 2

DEFINITIONS

SECTION 201

GENERAL

201.1 Scope. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings shown in this chapter.

201.2 Interchangeability. Words stated in the present tense include the future; words stated in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural the singular.

201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the International Building Code, International Fire Code, International Fuel Gas Code or the International Mechanical Code, such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

201.4 Terms not defined. Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION 202

GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ACCEPTED ENGINEERING PRACTICE. That which conforms to accepted principles, tests or standards of nationally recognized technical or scientific authorities.

[M] ACCESS (TO). That which enables a fixture, appliance or equipment to be reached by ready access or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel, door or similar obstruction (see “Ready access”).

ACCESS COVER. A removable plate, usually secured by bolts or screws, to permit access to a pipe or pipe fitting for the purposes of inspection, repair or cleaning.

ADAPTER FITTING. An approved connecting device that suitably and properly joins or adjusts pipes and fittings that do not otherwise fit together.

AIR ADMITTANCE VALVE. One-way valve designed to allow air to enter the plumbing drainage system when negative pressures develop in the piping system. The device shall close by gravity and seal the vent terminal at zero differential pressure (no flow conditions) and under positive internal pressures. The purpose of an air admittance valve is to provide a method of allowing air to enter the plumbing drainage system without the use of a vent extended to open air and to prevent sewer gases from escaping into a building.

AIR BREAK (Drainage System). A piping arrangement in which a drain from a fixture, appliance or device discharges indirectly into another fixture, receptacle or interceptor at a point below the flood level rim and above the trap seal.

AIR GAP (Drainage System). The unobstructed vertical distance through the free atmosphere between the outlet of the waste pipe and the flood level rim of the receptacle into which the waste pipe is discharging.

AIR GAP (Water Distribution System). The unobstructed vertical distance through the free atmosphere between the lowest opening from any pipe or faucet supplying water to a tank, plumbing fixture or other device and the flood level rim of the receptacle.

[R] ALTERATION. Any construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition that requires a permit. Also, a change in a building, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation that requires a permit.

ALTERNATE ON-SITE NONPOTABLE WATER. Non-potable water from other than public utilities, on-site surface sources and subsurface natural freshwater sources. Examples of such water are gray water, on-site reclaimed water, collected rainwater, captured condensate and rejected water from reverse osmosis systems.

ALTERNATIVE ENGINEERED DESIGN. A plumbing system that performs in accordance with the intent of Chapters 3 through 14 and provides an equivalent level of performance for the protection of public health, safety and welfare. The system design is not specifically regulated by Chapters 3 through 14.

ANCHORS. See “Supports.”

ANTISIPHON. A term applied to valves or mechanical devices that eliminate siphonage.

[A] APPROVED. Acceptable to the code official or other authority having jurisdiction for compliance with the provisions of the applicable code or referenced standard.

[A] APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, where such agency has been approved by the code official.

AREA DRAIN. A receptacle designed to collect surface or storm water from an open area.

ASPIRATOR. A fitting or device supplied with water or other fluid under positive pressure that passes through an integral orifice or constriction, causing a vacuum. Aspirators are also referred to as suction apparatus, and are similar in operation to an ejector.

[R] BACKFLOW, DRAINAGE. A reversal of flow in the drainage system.

[R] BACKFLOW, WATER DISTRIBUTION. The flow of water or other liquids into the potable water-supply piping from any sources other than its intended source. Backflow is one type of backflow.
DEFINITIONS

BACKFLOW CONNECTION. Any arrangement whereby backflow is possible.

BACKFLOW PREVENTER. A backflow prevention assembly, a backflow prevention device or other means or method to prevent backflow into the potable water supply.

[R] BACKFLOW PREVENTER, REDUCED-PRES-URE-ZONE TYPE. A backflow-prevention device consisting of two independently acting check valves, internally force loaded to a normally closed position and separated by an intermediate chamber (or zone) in which there is an automatic relief means of venting to atmosphere internally loaded to a normally open position between two tightly closing shutoff valves and with means for testing for tightness of the checks and opening of relief means.

[R] BACKPRESSURE. Pressure created by any means in the water distribution system that by being in excess of the pressure in the water supply mains causes a potential backflow condition.

[R] BACKPRESSURE, LOW HEAD. A pressure less than or equal to 4.33 psi (29.88 kPa) or the pressure exerted by a 10-foot (3048 mm) column of water.

[R] BACKSIPHONAGE. The flowing back of used or contaminated water from piping into a potable water-supply pipe because of a negative pressure in such pipe.

BACKWATER VALVE. A device or valve installed in the building drain or sewer pipe where a sewer is subject to backflow, and that prevents drainage or waste from backing up into a lower level or fixtures and causing a flooding condition.

[BS] BASE FLOOD ELEVATION. A reference point, determined in accordance with the building code, based on the depth or peak elevation of flooding, including wave height, which has a 1 percent (100-year flood) or greater chance of occurring in any given year.

BATHROOM GROUP. A group of fixtures consisting of a water closet, lavatory, bathtub or shower, including or excluding a bidet, an emergency floor drain or both. Such fixtures are located together on the same floor level.

BATTERY OF FIXTURES. Any group of two or more similar adjacent fixtures that discharge into a common horizontal waste or soil branch.

BEDPAN STEAMER OR BOILER. A fixture utilized for scalding bedpans or urinals by direct application of steam or boiling water.

BEDPAN WASHER AND STERILIZER. A fixture designed to wash bedpans and to flush the contents into the sanitary drainage system. Included are fixtures of this type that provide for disinfecting utensils by scalding with steam or hot water.

BEDPAN WASHER HOSE. A device supplied with hot and cold water and located adjacent to a water closet or clinical sink to be utilized for cleansing bedpans.

BRANCH. Any part of the piping system except a riser, main or stack.

BRANCH, FIXTURE. See “Fixture branch.”

BRANCH, HORIZONTAL. See “Horizontal branch drain.”

BRANCH INTERVAL. A distance along a soil or waste stack corresponding, in general, to a story height, but not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) within which the horizontal branches from one floor or story of a structure are connected to the stack. Measurements are taken down the stack from the highest horizontal branch connection.

[R] BRANCH MAIN. A water-distribution pipe that extends horizontally off a main or riser to convey water to branches or fixture groups.

BRANCH VENT. A vent connecting one or more individual vents with a vent stack or stack vent.

[A] BUILDING. Any structure occupied or intended for supporting or sheltering any occupancy.

[R] BUILDING, EXISTING. Existing building is a building erected prior to the adoption of this code, or one for which a legal building permit has been issued.

BUILDING DRAIN. That part of the lowest piping of a drainage system that receives the discharge from soil, waste and other drainage pipes inside and that extends to 10 feet (3048 mm) beyond the exterior walls of the building and conveys the drainage to the building sewer.

Combined. A building drain that conveys both sewage and storm water or other drainage.

Sanitary. A building drain that conveys sewage only.

Storm. A building drain that conveys storm water or other drainage, but not sewage.

BUILDING SEWER. That part of the drainage system that extends from the end of the building drain and conveys the discharge to a public sewer, private sewer, individual sewage disposal system or other point of disposal.

Combined. A building sewer that conveys both sewage and storm water or other drainage.

Sanitary. A building sewer that conveys sewage only.

Storm. A building sewer that conveys storm water or other drainage, but not sewage.

BUILDING SUBDRAIN. That portion of a drainage system that does not drain by gravity into the building sewer.

BUILDING TRAP. A device, fitting or assembly of fittings installed in the building drain to prevent circulation of air between the drainage system of the building and the building sewer.

CIRCUIT VENT. A vent that connects to a horizontal drainage branch and vents two traps to a maximum of eight traps or trapped fixtures connected into a battery.

CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM. A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to fixture supply and back to the water-heating equipment.

CISTERN. A small covered tank for storing water for a home or farm. Generally, this tank stores rainwater to be utilized for purposes other than in the potable water supply, and such tank is placed underground in most cases.
CLEANOUT. An access opening in the drainage system utilized for the removal of obstructions. Types of cleanouts include a removable plug or cap, and a removable fixture or fixture trap.

[A] CODE. These regulations, subsequent amendments thereto, or any emergency rule or regulation that the administrative authority having jurisdiction has lawfully adopted.

[A] CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

COLLECTION PIPE. Unpressurized pipe used within the collection system that drains on-site nonpotable water or rainwater to a storage tank by gravity.

COMBINATION FIXTURE. A fixture combining one sink and laundry tray or a two- or three-compartment sink or laundry tray in one unit.

COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEM. A specially designed system of waste piping embodying the horizontal wet venting of one or more sinks, lavatories, drinking fountains or floor drains by means of a common waste and vent pipe adequately sized to provide free movement of air above the flow line of the drain.

COMBINED BUILDING DRAIN. See “Building drain, combined.”

COMBINED BUILDING SEWER. See “Building sewer, combined.”

COMMON VENT. A vent connecting at the junction of two fixture drains or to a fixture branch and serving as a vent for both fixtures.

CONCEALED FOULING SURFACE. Any surface of a plumbing fixture that is not readily visible and is not scoured or cleansed with each fixture operation.

[R] CONDENSATE. The liquid that separates from a gas because of a reduction in temperature; for example, water that condenses from flue gases and water that condenses from air circulating through the cooling coil in air conditioning equipment.

[R] CONDENSING APPLIANCE. An appliance that condenses water generated by the burning of fuels.

CONDUCTOR. A pipe inside the building that conveys storm water from the roof to a storm or combined building drain.

[A] CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENT. All of the written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of the project necessary for obtaining a building permit. The construction drawings shall be drawn to an appropriate scale.

CONTAMINATION. An impairment of the quality of the potable water that creates an actual hazard to the public health through poisoning or the spread of disease by sewage, industrial fluids or waste.

[R] CONTINUOUS WASTE. A drain from two or more similar adjacent fixtures connected to a single trap.

CRITICAL LEVEL (C-L). An elevation (height) reference point that determines the minimum height at which a backflow preventer or vacuum breaker is installed above the flood level rim of the fixture or receptor served by the device. The critical level is the elevation level below which there is a potential for backflow to occur. If the critical level marking is not indicated on the device, the bottom of the device shall constitute the critical level.

CROSS CONNECTION. Any physical connection or arrangement between two otherwise separate piping systems, one of which contains potable water and the other either water of unknown or questionable safety or steam, gas or chemical, whereby there exists the possibility for flow from one system to the other, with the direction of flow depending on the pressure differential between the two systems (see “Backflow”).

DEAD END. A branch leading from a soil, waste or vent pipe; a building drain; or a building sewer, and terminating at a developed length of 2 feet (610 mm) or more by means of a plug, cap or other closed fitting.

DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM. A water distribution system where pumps prime the service hot water piping with heated water upon a demand for hot water.

DEPTH OF TRAP SEAL. The depth of liquid that would have to be removed from a full trap before air could pass through the trap.

[BS] DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION. The elevation of the “design flood,” including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the community’s legally designated flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO, the design flood elevation shall be the elevation of the highest existing grade of the building’s perimeter plus the depth number (in feet) specified on the flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO where a depth number is not specified on the map, the depth number shall be taken as being equal to 2 feet (610 mm).

[R] DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. See “Registered design professional.”

DEVELOPED LENGTH. The length of a pipeline measured along the centerline of the pipe and fittings.

[R] DIRECT SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop is not separated from the load.

DISCHARGE PIPE. A pipe that conveys the discharge from plumbing fixtures or appliances.

DRAIN. Any pipe that carries waste water or water-borne wastes in a building drainage system.

[R] DRAIN-BACK SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the fluid in the solar collector loop is drained from the collector into a holding tank under prescribed circumstances.
DEFINITIONS

DRAINAGE FITTING. The type of fitting or fittings utilized in the drainage system. Drainage fittings are similar to cast-iron fittings, except that instead of having a bell and spigot, drainage fittings are recessed and tapped to eliminate ridges on the inside of the installed pipe.

DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNIT.

Drainage (dfu). A measure of the probable discharge into the drainage system by various types of plumbing fixtures. The drainage fixture-unit value for a particular fixture depends on its volume rate of drainage discharge, on the time duration of a single drainage operation and on the average time between successive operations.

DRAINAGE SYSTEM. Piping within a public or private premise that conveys sewage, rainwater or other liquid waste to a point of disposal. A drainage system does not include the mains of a public sewer system or a private or public sewage treatment or disposal plant.

Building gravity. A drainage system that drains by gravity into the building sewer.

Sanitary. A drainage system that carries sewage and excludes storm, surface and ground water.

Storm. A drainage system that carries rainwater, surface water, subsurface water and similar liquid waste.

DRINKING FOUNTAIN. A plumbing fixture that is connected to the potable water distribution system and the drainage system. The fixture allows the user to obtain a drink directly from a stream of flowing water without the use of any accessories.

EFFECTIVE OPENING. The minimum cross-sectional area at the point of water supply discharge, measured or expressed in terms of the diameter of a circle or, if the opening is not circular, the diameter of a circle of equivalent cross-sectional area.

EMERGENCY FLOOR DRAIN. A floor drain that does not receive the discharge of any drain or indirect waste pipe, and that protects against damage from accidental spills, fixture overflows and leakage.

ESSENTIALLY NONTOXIC TRANSFER FLUID. Fluids having a Gosselin rating of 1, including propylene glycol; mineral oil; polydimethylsiloxane; hydrochlorofluorocarbon, chlorofluorocarbon and carbon refrigerants; and FDA-approved boiler water additives for steam boilers.

ESSENTIALLY TOXIC TRANSFER FLUID. Soil, waste or gray water and fluids having a Gosselin rating of 2 or more, including ethylene glycol, hydrocarbon oils, ammonia refrigerants and hydrazine.

EXISTING INSTALLATION. Any plumbing system regulated by this code that was legally installed prior to the effective date of this code, or for which a permit to install has been issued.

FAUCET. A valve end of a water pipe through which water is drawn from or held within the pipe.

FILL VALVE. A water supply valve, opened or closed by a water supply pipe or fixture group main.

See “Plumbing fixture.”

FIXTURE. See “Plumbing fixture.”

FIXTURE BRANCH, DRAINAGE. A drain serving two or more fixtures that discharges to another drain or to a stack.

[F] FIXTURE BRANCH, WATER-SUPPLY. A water-supply pipe between the fixture supply and a main water-distribution pipe or fixture group main.

FIXTURE DRAIN. The drain from the trap of a fixture to a junction with any other drain pipe.

FIXTURE FITTING.

Supply fitting. A fitting that controls the volume, direction of flow or both, of water and is either attached to or accessible from a fixture, or is used with an open or atmospheric discharge.

Waste fitting. A combination of components that conveys the sanitary waste from the outlet of a fixture to the connection to the sanitary drainage system.

[F] FIXTURE GROUP, MAIN. The main water-distribution pipe (or secondary branch) serving a plumbing fixture grouping such as a bath, kitchen or laundry area to which two or more individual fixture branch pipes are connected.

FIXTURE SUPPLY. The water supply pipe connecting a fixture or fixture fitting to a branch water supply pipe or directly to a main water supply pipe.

[F] FIXTURE UNIT, DRAINAGE (d.f.u.). A measure of probable discharge into the drainage system by various types of plumbing fixtures, used to size DWV piping systems. The drainage fixture-unit value for a particular fixture depends on its volume rate of drainage discharge, on the time duration of a single drainage operation and on the average time between successive operations.

[F] FIXTURE UNIT, WATER-SUPPLY (w.s.f.u.). A measure of probable hydraulic demand on the water supply by various types of plumbing fixtures used to size water-piping systems. The water-supply fixture-unit value for a particular fixture depends on its volume rate of supply, on the time duration of a single supply operation and on the average time between successive operations.

[BS] FLOOD HAZARD AREA. The greater of the following two areas:

1. The area within a flood plain subject to a 1-percent or greater chance of flooding in any given year.
2. The area designated as a flood hazard area on a community’s flood hazard map or as otherwise legally designated.

FLOOD-LEVEL RIM. The edge of the receptacle from which water overflows.

[F] FLOOR DRAIN. A plumbing fixture for recess in the floor having a floor-level strainer intended for the purpose of the collection and disposal of water waste used in cleaning the floor and for the collection and disposal of accidental spillage to the floor.
DEFINITIONS

FLOW CONTROL (Vented). A device installed upstream from the interceptor having an orifice that controls the rate of flow through the interceptor and an air intake (vent) downstream from the orifice that allows air to be drawn into the flow stream.

FLOW PRESSURE. The pressure in the water supply pipe near the faucet or water outlet while the faucet or water outlet is wide open and flowing.

FLUSH TANK. A tank designed with a fill valve and flush valve to flush the contents of the bowl or usable portion of the fixture.

FLUSH VALVE. A device located at the bottom of a flush tank that is operated to flush water closets.

FLUSHOMETER TANK. A device integrated within an air accumulator vessel that is designed to discharge a predetermined quantity of water to fixtures for flushing purposes.

FLUSHOMETER VALVE. A valve attached to a pressurized water supply pipe and so designed that when activated it opens the line for direct flow into the fixture at a rate and quantity to operate the fixture properly, and then gradually closes to reseat fixture traps and avoid water hammer.

[F] FULLWAY VALVE. A valve that in the full open position has an opening cross-sectional area that is not less than 85 percent of the cross-sectional area of the connecting pipe.

[R] GRADE, PIPING. See “Slope.”

GRAY WATER. Waste discharged from lavatories, bathtubs, showers, clothes washers and laundry trays.

GREASE INTERCEPTOR.

Fats, oils and greases (FOG) disposal system. A plumbing appurtenance that reduces nonpetroleum fats, oils and greases in effluent by separation or mass and volume reduction.

Gravity. Plumbing appurtenances that are installed in the sanitary drainage system to intercept free-floating fats, oils and grease from waste water discharge. Separation is accomplished by gravity.

Hydromechanical. Plumbing appurtenances that are installed in the sanitary drainage system to intercept free-floating fats, oils and grease from waste water discharge. Continuous separation is accomplished by air entrainment, buoyancy and interior baffling.

GREASE-LADEN WASTE. Effluent discharge that is produced from food processing, food preparation or other sources where grease, fats and oils enter automatic diswasher prerinse stations, sinks or other appurtenances.

GREASE REMOVAL DEVICE, AUTOMATIC (GRD). A plumbing appurtenance that is installed in the sanitary drainage system to intercept free-floating fats, oils and grease from waste water discharge. Such a device operates on a time- or event-controlled basis and has the ability to remove free-floating fats, oils and grease automatically without intervention from the user except for maintenance.

GRIDDED WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. A water distribution system where every water distribution pipe is interconnected so as to provide two or more paths to each fixture supply pipe.

HANGERS. See “Supports.”

HORIZONTAL BRANCH DRAIN. A drainage branch pipe extending laterally from a soil or waste stack or building drain, with or without vertical sections or branches, that receives the discharge from two or more fixture drains or branches and conducts the discharge to the soil or waste stack or to the building drain.

HORIZONTAL PIPE. Any pipe or fitting that makes an angle of less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) with a horizontal plane.

HOT WATER. Water at a temperature greater than 110°F (43°C).

HOUSE TRAP. See “Building trap.”

[R] INDIRECT SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop circulates between the solar collector and a heat exchanger and such gas or liquid is not drained from the system or supplied to the load during normal operation.

INDIRECT WASTE PIPE. A waste pipe that does not connect directly with the drainage system, but that discharges into the drainage system through an air break or air gap into a trap, fixture, receptor or interceptor.

INDIRECT WASTE RECEPTOR. A plumbing fixture, plumbing equipment or appliances that are required to discharge to the drainage system through an air gap. The following types of fixtures fall within the classification of indirect liquid waste receptors: floor sinks, mop receptors, service sinks and standpipe drains with integral air gaps.

INDIVIDUAL SEWAGE DISPOSAL SYSTEM. A system for disposal of domestic sewage by means of a septic tank, cesspool or mechanical treatment, designed for utilization apart from a public sewer to serve a single establishment or building.

INDIVIDUAL VENT. A pipe installed to vent a fixture trap and that connects with the vent system above the fixture served or terminates in the open air.

INDIVIDUAL WATER SUPPLY. A water supply that serves one or more families, and that is not an approved public water supply.

INTERCEPTOR. A device designed and installed to separate and retain for removal, by automatic or manual means, deleterious, hazardous or undesirable matter from normal wastes, while permitting normal sewage or wastes to discharge into the drainage system by gravity.

JOINT.

Expansion. A loop, return bend or return offset that provides for the expansion and contraction in a piping system and is utilized in tall buildings or where there is a rapid change of temperature, as in power plants, steam rooms and similar occupancies.
Flexible. Any joint between two pipes that permits one pipe to be deflected or moved without movement or deflection of the other pipe.

Mechanical. See “Mechanical joint.”

Slip. A type of joint made by means of a washer or a special type of packing compound in which one pipe is slipped into the end of an adjacent pipe.

[JURISDICTION] Jurisdiction. The governmental unit that has adopted this code under due legislative authority.

[KITCHEN] Kitchen. Kitchen shall mean an area used, or designated to be used, for the preparation of food.

Labeled. Equipment, devices, fixtures or materials bearing the label of an approved agency.

Laundry tray. A fixed tub with running water and drainpipe for washing clothes and other household linens, also called set tub.

Lead-free pipe and fittings. Containing not more than a weighted average of 0.25-percent lead when used with respect to the wetted surfaces of pipes, pipe fittings, plumbing fittings, and fixtures.

Lead-free solder and flux. Containing not more than 0.2-percent lead.

Leader. An exterior drainage pipe for conveying storm water from roof or gutter drains to an approved means of disposal.

Local vent stack. A vertical pipe to which connections are made from the fixture side of traps and through which vapor or foul air is removed from the fixture or device utilized on bedpan washers.

Macerating toilet system. An assembly consisting of a water closet and sump with a macerating pump that is designed to collect, grind and pump wastes from the water closet and up to two other fixtures connected to the sump.

Main. The principal pipe artery to which branches are connected.

[MAIN SEWER] Main sewer. See “Public sewer.”

Manifold. See “Plumbing appurtenance.”

[MANIFOLD WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS] Manifold water distribution systems. A fabricated piping arrangement in which a large supply main is fitted with multiple branches in close proximity in which water is distributed separately to fixtures from each branch.

Mechanical joint. A connection between pipes, fittings, or pipes and fittings that is not screwed, caulked, threaded, soldered, solvent cemented, brazed, welded or heat fused. A joint in which compression is applied along the centerline of the pieces being joined. In some applications, the joint is part of a coupling, fitting or adapter.

Medical gas system. Deleted.

Medical vacuum system. A system consisting of central-vacuum-producing equipment with pressure and operating controls, shutoff valves, alarm-warning systems, gauges and a network of piping extending to and terminating with suitable station inlets at locations where patient suction may be required.

Meter. A measuring device used to collect data and indicate water usage.

Nonpotable water. Water not safe for drinking, personal or culinary utilization.

Nuisance. Public nuisance as known in common law or in equity jurisprudence; whatever is dangerous to human life or detrimental to health; whatever structure or premises is not sufficiently ventilated, sewered, drained, cleaned or lighted, with respect to its intended occupancy; and whatever renders the air, or human food, drink or water supply unwholesome.

Occupancy. The purpose for which a building or portion thereof is utilized or occupied.

Offset. A combination of approved bends that makes two changes in direction bringing one section of the pipe out of line but into a line parallel with the other section.

On-site nonpotable water reuse system. A water system for the collection, treatment, storage, distribution and reuse of nonpotable water generated on site, including but not limited to a gray water system. This definition does not include a rainwater harvesting system.

Open air. Outside the structure.

Pipe sizes. For the purposes of determining the minimum size of pipe required, cross-sectional areas are the essential characteristic, not the pipe diameter. When the Code instructs to “increase by one pipe size,” some pipe sizes may not be commercially available. The following pipe sizes are presumed to be commercially available: 1, 1 1/4, 1 1/2, 2, 2 1/4, 2 1/2, 3, 3 1/4, 3 1/2, 4, 4 1/4, 4 1/2, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.

Pitch. See “Slope.”

Plumbing. The practice, materials and fixtures utilized in the installation, maintenance, extension and alteration of all piping, fixtures, plumbing appliances and plumbing appurtenances, within or adjacent to any structure, in connection with sanitary drainage or storm drainage facilities; venting systems; and public or private water supply systems.

Plumbing appliance. An energized household appliance with plumbing connections, such as a dishwasher, food waste disposer, clothes washer or water heater. Water or drain-connected devices intended to perform a special function. These devices have their operation or control dependent on one or more energized components, such as motors, controls or heating elements. Such devices are manually adjusted or controlled by the owner or operator, or are operated automatically through one or more of the following actions: a time cycle, a temperature range, a pressure range, a measured volume or weight.

Plumbing appurtenance. A manufactured device, prefabricated assembly or on-the-job assembly of component parts that is an adjunct to the basic piping system and plumbing fixtures. An appurtenance demands no additional water supply and does not add any discharge load to a fixture or to the drainage system. Examples include filters, relief valves, pumps and aerators.

Plumbing fixture. A receptacle or device that is either permanently or temporarily connected to the water distribution system of the premises and demands a supply of water there-
or sewage either directly or indirectly to a drainage system of the premises; or requires both a water supply connection and a discharge to the drainage system of the premises.

PLUMBING SYSTEM. A system that includes the water distribution pipes; plumbing fixtures and traps; water-treating or water-using equipment; soil, waste and vent pipes; and building drains; in addition to their respective connections, devices and appurtenances within a structure or premises; and the water service, building sewer and building storm sewer serving such structure or premises.

POLLUTION. An impairment of the quality of the potable water to a degree that does not create a hazard to public health but that does adversely and unreasonably affect the aesthetic qualities of such potable water for domestic use.

POTABLE WATER. Water free from impurities present in amounts sufficient to cause disease or harmful physiological effects and conforming to the bacteriological and chemical quality requirements of the Public Health Service Drinking Water Standards or the regulations of the public health authority having jurisdiction.

PRIVATE. In the classification of plumbing fixtures, “private” applies to fixtures in residences and apartments, and to fixtures in nonpublic toilet rooms of hotels and motels and similar installations in buildings where the plumbing fixtures are intended for utilization by a family or an individual.

PUBLIC OR PUBLIC UTILIZATION. In the classification of plumbing fixtures, “public” applies to fixtures in general toilet rooms of schools, gymnasiums, hotels, airports, bus and railroad stations, public buildings, bars, public comfort stations, office buildings, stadiums, stores, restaurants and other installations where a number of fixtures are installed so that their utilization is similarly unrestricted.

PUBLIC WATER MAIN. A water supply pipe for public utilization controlled by public authority.

QUICK-CLOSING VALVE. A valve or faucet that closes automatically when released manually or that is controlled by a mechanical means for fast-action closing.

RAINWATER. Water from natural precipitation.

[M] READY ACCESS. That which enables a fixture, appliance or equipment to be directly reached without requiring the removal or movement of any panel, door or similar obstruction and without the use of a portable ladder, step stool or similar device.

RECLAIMED WATER. Nonpotable water that has been derived from the treatment of waste water by a facility or system licensed or permitted to produce water meeting the jurisdiction’s water requirements for its intended uses. Also known as “recycled water.”

[R] RECEPTOR. A fixture or device that receives the discharge from indirect waste pipes.

REDUCED PRESSURE PRINCIPLE BACKFLOW PREVENTION ASSEMBLY. A backflow prevention device consisting of two independently acting check valves, internally force-loaded to a normally closed position and separated by an intermediate chamber (or zone) in which there is an automatic relief means of venting to the atmosphere, internally loaded to a normally open position between two tightly closing shutoff valves and with a means for testing for tightness of the checks and opening of the relief means.

[A] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice professional architecture or engineering as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Design by a registered design professional is not required where exempt under the registration or licensure laws.

RELIEF VALVE. Pressure relief valve. A pressure-actuated valve held closed by a spring or other means and designed to relieve pressure automatically at the pressure at which such valve is set.

Temperature and pressure relief (T&P) valve. A combination relief valve designed to function as both a temperature relief and a pressure relief valve.

Temperature relief valve. A temperature-actuated valve designed to discharge automatically at the temperature at which such valve is set.

[R] RELIEF VALVE, VACUUM. A device to prevent excessive buildup of vacuum in a pressure vessel.

RELIEF VENT. A vent whose primary function is to provide circulation of air between drainage and vent systems.

[R] REPAIR. The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

RIM. An unobstructed open edge of a fixture.

RISER. See “Water pipe, riser.”

ROOF DRAIN. A drain installed to receive water collecting on the surface of a roof and to discharge such water into a leader or a conductor.

ROUGH-IN. Parts of the plumbing system that are installed prior to the installation of fixtures. This includes drainage, water supply, vent piping and the necessary fixture supports and any fixtures that are built into the structure.

[R] SANITARY SEWER. A sewer that carries sewage and excludes storm, surface and groundwater.

[R] SCUPPER. An opening in a wall or parapet that allows water to drain from a roof.

SELF-CLOSING FAUCET. A faucet containing a valve that automatically closes upon deactivation of the opening means.

SEPARATOR. See “Interceptor.”

[R] SEPTIC TANK. A water-tight receptor that receives the discharge of a building sanitary drainage system and is constructed so as to separate solids from the liquid, digest organic matter through a period of detention, and allow the liquids to discharge into the soil outside of the tank through a system of open joint or perforated piping or a seepage pit.
DEFINITIONS

SEWAGE. Any liquid waste containing animal or vegetable matter in suspension or solution, including liquids containing chemicals in solution.

SEWAGE EJECTOR. A device for lifting sewage by entraining the sewage in a high-velocity jet of steam, air or water.

[R] SEWAGE PUMP. A permanently installed mechanical device for removing sewage or liquid waste from a sump.

SEWER.

Building sewer. See “Building sewer.”

Public sewer. That part of the drainage system of pipes, installed and maintained by a city, township, county, public utility company or other public entity, and located on public property, in the street or in an approved dedicated easement of public or community use.

Sanitary sewer. A sewer that carries sewage and excludes storm, surface and ground water.

Storm sewer. A sewer that conveys rainwater, surface water, subsurface water and similar liquid wastes.

SLOPE. The fall (pitch) of a line of pipe in reference to a horizontal plane. In drainage, the slope is expressed as the fall in units vertical per units horizontal (percent) for a length of pipe.

SOIL STACK OR PIPE. A pipe that conveys sewage containing fecal matter to the building drain or building sewer.

SPILLPROOF VACUUM BREAKER. An assembly consisting of one check valve force-loaded closed and an air-inlet vent valve force-loaded open to atmosphere, positioned downstream of the check valve, and located between and including two tightly closing shutoff valves and a test cock.

STACK. A general term for any vertical line of soil, waste, vent or inside conductor piping that extends through at least one story with or without offsets as directly as possible to its vent terminal.

STACK VENT. The extension of a soil or waste stack above the highest horizontal drain connected to the stack.

STACK VENTING. A method of venting a fixture or fixtures through the soil or waste stack.

STERILIZER.

Boiling type. A boiling-type sterilizer is a fixture of a non-pressure type utilized for boiling instruments, utensils or other equipment for disinfection. These devices are portable or are connected to the plumbing system.

Instrument. A device for the sterilization of various instruments.

Pressure (autoclave). A pressure vessel fixture designed to utilize steam under pressure for sterilizing.

Pressure instrument washer sterilizer. A pressure vessel fixture designed to both wash and sterilize instruments during the operating cycle of the fixture.

Utensil. A device for the sterilization of utensils as utilized in health care services.

Water. A device for sterilizing water and storing water.

STERILIZER VENT. A separate pipe or stack, indirectly connected to the building drainage system at the lower terminal, that receives the vapors from nonpressure sterilizers, or the exhaust vapors from pressure sterilizers, and conducts the vapors directly to the open air. Also called vapor, steam, atmospheric or exhaust vent.

STORM DRAIN. See “Drainage system, storm.”

STORM WATER. Natural precipitation, including snowmelt, that has contacted a surface at or below grade.

[A] STRUCTURE. That which is built or constructed or a portion thereof.

SUBSOIL DRAIN. A drain that collects subsurface water or seepage water and conveys such water to a place of disposal.

SUMP. A tank or pit that receives sewage or liquid waste, located below the normal grade of the gravity system and that must be emptied by mechanical means.

SUMP PUMP. An automatic water pump powered by an electric motor for the removal of drainage, except raw sewage, from a sump, pit or low point. The pump is selected for the specific head and volume of the load and is usually operated by level controllers.

SUMP VENT. A vent from pneumatic sewage ejectors, or similar equipment, that terminates separately to the open air.

SUPPORTS. Devices for supporting and securing pipe, fixtures and equipment.

[R] SWEEP. A cast iron drainage fitting designed to provide a change in direction of a drain pipe of less than the angle specified by the amount necessary to establish the desired slope of the line. Sweeps provide a longer turning radius than bends and a less turbulent flow pattern.

SWIMMING POOL. Any structure, basin, chamber or tank containing an artificial body of water for swimming, diving or recreational bathing having a depth of 2 feet (610 mm) or more at any point.

TEMPERED WATER. Water having a temperature range between 85°F (29°C) and 110°F (43°C).

[R] TEMPERATURE- AND PRESSURE-RELIEF (T AND P) VALVE. A combination relief valve designed to function as both a temperature-relief and pressure-relief valve.

[R] TEMPERATURE-RELIEF VALVE. A temperature-actuated valve designed to discharge automatically at the temperature at which it is set.

THIRD-PARTY CERTIFICATION AGENCY. An approved agency operating a product or material certification system that incorporates initial product testing, assessment and surveillance of a manufacturer’s quality control system.

THIRD-PARTY CERTIFIED. Certification obtained by the manufacturer indicating that the function and performance characteristics of a product or material have been determined by testing and ongoing surveillance by an approved third-party certification agency. Assertion of certification is in the form of identification in accordance with the requirements of the third-party certification agency.
TOILET ROOM. A room containing a water closet and frequently a lavatory, but not a bathtub, shower, spa or similar bathing fixture.

TRAP. A fitting or device that provides a liquid seal to prevent the emission of sewer gases without materially affecting the flow of sewage or waste water through the trap.

[R] TRAP ARM. That portion of a fixture drain between a trap weir and the vent fitting.

[R] TRAP PRIMER. A device or system of piping to maintain a water seal in a trap, typically installed where infrequent use of the trap would result in evaporation of the trap seal, such as floor drains.

[R] TRAP SEAL. The trap seal is the maximum vertical depth of liquid that a trap will retain, measured between the crown weir and the top of the dip of the trap.

UNSTABLE GROUND. Earth that does not provide a uniform bearing for the barrel of the sewer pipe between the joints at the bottom of the pipe trench.

VACUUM. Any pressure less than that exerted by the atmosphere.

VACUUM BREAKER. A device that prevents back-siphonage of water by admitting atmospheric pressure through ports to the discharge side of the device.

VENT PIPE. See “Vent system.”

VENT STACK. A vertical vent pipe installed primarily for the purpose of providing circulation of air to and from any part of the drainage system.

VENT SYSTEM. A pipe or pipes installed to provide a flow of air to or from a plumbing drainage system, or to provide a circulation of air within such system to protect trap seals from siphonage and backpressure.

VERTICAL PIPE. Any pipe or fitting that makes an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) or more with the horizontal.

WALL-HUNG WATER CLOSET. A wall-mounted water closet installed in such a way that the fixture does not touch the floor.

WASTE. Liquid-borne waste that does not contain fecal matter.

WASTE PIPE OR STACK. Piping that conveys only liquid sewage not containing fecal material.

WASTE RECEPTOR. A floor sink, standpipe, hub drain or floor drain that receives the discharge of one or more indirect waste pipes.

WATER COOLER. A drinking fountain that incorporates a means of reducing the temperature of the water supplied to it from the potable water distribution system.

WATER DISPENSER. A plumbing fixture that is manually controlled by the user for the purpose of dispensing potable drinking water into a receptacle such as a cup, glass or bottle. Such fixture is connected to the potable water distribution system of the premises. This definition also includes a free-standing apparatus for the same purpose that is not connected to the potable water distribution system and that is supplied with potable water from a container, bottle or reservoir.

[R] WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Piping that conveys water from the service to the plumbing fixtures, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, devices or other systems served, including fittings and control valves.

WATER-HAMMER ARRESTOR. A device utilized to absorb the pressure surge (water hammer) that occurs when water flow is suddenly stopped in a water supply system.

[M] WATER HEATER. Any heating appliance or equipment that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

WATER MAIN. A water supply pipe or system of pipes, installed and maintained by a city, township, county, public utility company or other public entity, on public property, in the street or in an approved dedicated easement of public or community use.

WATER OUTLET. A discharge opening through which water is supplied to a fixture, into the atmosphere, such as a hose bibb (except into an open tank that is part of the water supply system), to a boiler or heating system, or to any devices or equipment requiring water to operate but which are not part of the plumbing system.

WATER PIPE.

Riser. A water supply pipe that extends one full story or more to convey water to branches or to a group of fixtures.

Water distribution pipe. A pipe within the structure or on the premises that conveys water from the water service pipe, or from the meter when the meter is at the structure, to the points of utilization.

Water service pipe. The pipe from the water main or other source of potable water supply, or from the meter when the meter is at the public right of way, to the water distribution system of the building served. The water service pipe shall terminate 5 feet (1524 mm) outside the foundation wall.

WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM. The water service pipe, water distribution pipes, and the necessary connecting pipes, fittings, control valves and all appurtenances in or adjacent to the structure or premises.

WEIGHTED AVERAGE LEAD CONTENT. The weighted average lead content of a pipe, pipe fitting, plumbing fitting, or fixture shall be calculated by using the following formula: For each wetted component, the percentage of lead in the component shall be multiplied by the ratio of the face area of the entire product to arrive at the weighted percentage of lead of the component. The weighted percentage of lead of each wetted component shall be added together, and the sum of these wetted percentages shall constitute the weighted average lead content of the product. For lead content of materials that are provided as a range, the maximum content of the range shall be used.

WELL. Deleted.

WET VENT. A vent that receives the discharge of wastes from other fixtures.

WHIRLPOOL BATHTUB. A plumbing appliance consisting of a bathtub fixture that is equipped and fitted with a cir-
DEFINITIONS

Calculating piping system designed to accept, circulate and discharge bathtub water upon each use.

**YARD HYDRANT.** A freezeproof outdoor water supply outlet that has a valve and outlet above ground and a drain opening below the frost level.

**YOKE VENT.** A pipe connecting upward from a soil or waste stack to a vent stack for the purpose of preventing pressure changes in the stacks.
CHAPTER 3
GENERAL REGULATIONS

SECTION 301
GENERAL

301.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the general regulations regarding the installation of plumbing not specific to other chapters.

301.2 System installation. Plumbing shall be installed with due regard to preservation of the strength of structural members and prevention of damage to walls and other surfaces through fixture usage.

301.3 Connections to drainage system. Plumbing fixtures, drains, appurtenances and appliances used to receive or discharge liquid waste or sewage shall be directly connected to the sanitary drainage system of the building or premises, in accordance with the requirements of this code. This section shall not be construed to prevent indirect waste systems required by Chapter 8.

301.4 Connections to water supply. Every plumbing fixture, device or appliance requiring or using water for its proper operation shall be directly or indirectly connected to the water supply system in accordance with the provisions of this code.

301.5 Pipe, tube and fitting sizes. See Chapter 2, Definitions, “Pipe sizes.”

301.6 Prohibited locations. Plumbing systems shall not be located in an elevator shaft or in an elevator equipment room.

301.7 Conflicts. Where conflicts between this code and the conditions of the listing or the manufacturer’s installation instructions occur, the provisions of this code apply.

SECTION 302
EXCLUSION OF MATERIALS DETRIMENTAL TO THE SEWER SYSTEM

302.1 Detrimental or dangerous materials. Disposal of these materials shall be done in accordance with the requirements of the North Carolina General Statutes and local ordinances. Ashes, cinders or rags; flammable, poisonous or explosive liquids or gases; oil, grease or any other insoluble material capable of obstructing, damaging or overloading the building drainage or sewer system, or capable of interfering with the normal operation of the sewage treatment processes, or private disposal system, shall not be deposited into such systems.

302.2 Industrial wastes. Waste products from manufacturing or industrial operations shall not be introduced into the public sewer until it has been determined by the code official or other authority having jurisdiction that the introduction thereof will not damage the public sewer system or interfere with the functioning of the sewage treatment plant.

SECTION 303
MATERIALS

303.1 Identification. Each length of pipe and each pipe fitting, trap, fixture, material and device utilized in a plumbing system shall bear the identification of the manufacturer and any markings required by the applicable referenced standards. Nipples created from the cutting and threading of approved pipe shall not be required to be identified.

303.2 Installation of materials. All materials used shall be installed in strict accordance with the standards under which the materials are accepted and approved. In the absence of such installation procedures, the manufacturer’s instructions shall be followed. Where the requirements of referenced standards or manufacturer’s installation instructions do not conform to minimum provisions of this code, the provisions of this code shall apply.

303.3 Plastic pipe, fittings and components. All plastic pipe, fittings and components shall be third-party certified as conforming to NSF 14.

303.4 Third-party certification. All plumbing products and materials shall be listed by a third-party certification agency as complying with the referenced standards. Products and materials shall be identified in accordance with Section 303.1.

SECTION 304
RODENTPROOFING

304.1 General. Plumbing systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 304.2 through 304.4 and the North Carolina Building Code, Appendix H to prevent rodents from entering structures.

304.2 Strainer plates. All strainer plates on drain inlets shall be designed and installed so that all openings are not greater than 7/8 inch (12.7 mm) in least dimension.

304.3 Meter boxes. Deleted.
304.4 Openings for pipes. In or on structures where open-
ing have been made in walls, floors or ceilings for the pas-
sage of pipes, the annular space between the pipe and the
sides of the opening shall be sealed with materials compatible
with the piping materials and locations by use of collars or
caulking materials or gasket systems.

SECTION 305
PROTECTION OF PIPES AND
PLUMBING SYSTEM COMPONENTS

305.1 Corrosion. Pipes passing through concrete or cinder
walls and floors or other corrosive material shall be protected
against external corrosion by a protective sheathing or wrap-
ping or other means that will withstand any reaction from the
lime and acid of concrete, cinder or other corrosive material.
Sheathing or wrapping shall allow for movement including
expansion and contraction of piping. The wall thickness of
the material shall be not less than 0.025 inch (0.64 mm).

305.2 Stress and strain. Piping in a plumbing system shall
be installed so as to prevent strains and stresses that exceed
the structural strength of the pipe. Where necessary, provi-
sions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting
from expansion, contraction and structural settlement.

305.3 Pipes through or under footings or foundation walls.
Any pipe that passes within 12 inches (305 mm) of the bottom
of the footing or through a foundation wall shall be provided
with a relieving arch, or a pipe sleeve. Pipe sleeves for foun-
dation walls shall be built into the foundation wall. The sleeve
shall be two pipe sizes greater than the pipe passing through
the wall. Piping shall not be run under pier footing (refer to
Section 307). Annular spaces between sleeves and pipes shall
be filled or tightly sealed in an approved manner. Annular
spaces between sleeves and pipes in fire-resistance-rated
assemblies shall be filled or tightly sealed in accordance with
the North Carolina Building Code. Only sleeves through foun-
dation or exterior building walls shall be sealed on both sides.

305.4 Freezing. Water pipes installed in a wall exposed to
the exterior shall be located on the heated side of the wall
insulation. Water, soil and waste pipes shall not be installed
outside of a building, in unconditioned attics, unconditioned
utility rooms, or in any other place subjected to freezing tem-
peratures unless adequate provision is made to protect such
pipes from freezing by a minimum of R6.5 insulation deter-
mined at 75°F (24°C) in accordance with ASTM C177 or
heat or both.

Exterior water supply system piping shall be installed not
less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the frost line and not less
than 12 inches (305 mm) below grade.

Note: These provisions are minimum requirements, which
have been found suitable for normal weather conditions.
Abnormally low temperatures for extended periods may
require additional provisions to prevent freezing.

305.4.1 Frost protection. No traps of soil or waste pipe
shall be installed or permitted outside of a building, or
concealed in outside walls or in any place where they may
be subjected to freezing temperatures, unless approved
provisions are made to protect them from freezing.

305.4.2 Sewer depth. Building sewers that connect to pri-
vate sewage disposal systems shall be installed not less
than 3 inches (76.2 mm) below finished grade at the point
of septic tank connection. Building sewers shall be
installed not less than 3 inches (76.2 mm) below grade.

305.5 Waterproofing of openings. Joints at the roof and
around vent pipes shall be made water tight by the use of
lead, copper, galvanized steel, aluminum, plastic or other
approved flashings or flashing material. Exterior wall open-
ings shall be made water tight.

305.6 Protection against physical damage. In concealed
locations where piping, other than cast-iron or galvanized
steel, is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, raft-
ers or similar members less than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) from
the nearest edge of the member, the pipe shall be protected
by steel shield plates. Such shield plates shall have a thickness
of not less than 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage). Such
plates shall cover the area of the pipe where the member is
notched or bored, and shall extend not less than 2 inches (51
mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

305.7 Protection of components of plumbing system. Com-
ponents of a plumbing system installed along alleyways,
driveways, parking garages or other locations exposed to
damage shall be recessed into the wall or otherwise protected
in an approved manner.

Exception: One- and two-family dwellings and town-
houses.

SECTION 306
TRENCHING, EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL

306.1 Support of piping. Buried piping shall be supported
throughout its entire length.

306.2 Trenching and bedding. Where trenches are exca-
vated such that the bottom of the trench forms the bed for the
pipe, solid and continuous load-bearing support shall be pro-
vided between joints. Bell holes, hub holes and coupling
holes shall be provided at points where the pipe is joined.
Such pipe shall not be supported on blocks to grade. In
instances where the materials manufacturer’s installation
instructions are more restrictive than those prescribed by the
code, the material shall be installed in accordance with the
more restrictive requirement.

306.2.1 Overexcavation. Where trenches are excavated
below the installation level of the pipe such that the bot-
tom of the trench does not form the bed for the pipe, the
trench shall be backfilled to the installation level of the
bottom of the pipe with sand or fine gravel placed in layers
not greater than 6 inches (152 mm) in depth and such
backfill shall be compacted after each placement.

306.2.2 Rock removal. Where rock is encountered in
trenching, the rock shall be removed to not less than 3
inches (76 mm) below the installation level of the bottom
of the pipe, and the trench shall be backfilled to the instal-
lation level of the bottom of the pipe with sand tamped in
place so as to provide uniform load-bearing support for the
pipe between joints. The pipe, including the joints, shall
not rest on rock at any point.
306.2.3 Soft load-bearing materials. If soft materials of poor load-bearing quality are found at the bottom of the trench, stabilization shall be achieved by overexcavating not less than two pipe diameters and backfilling to the installation level of the bottom of the pipe with fine gravel, crushed stone or a concrete foundation. The concrete foundation shall be bedded with sand tamped into place so as to provide uniform load-bearing support for the pipe between joints.

306.3 Backfilling. Backfill shall be free from discarded construction material and debris. Loose earth free from rocks, broken concrete and frozen chunks shall be placed in the trench in 6-inch (152 mm) layers and tamped in place until the crown of the pipe is covered by 12 inches (305 mm) of tamped earth. The backfill under and beside the pipe shall be compacted for pipe support. Backfill shall be brought up evenly on both sides of the pipe so that the pipe remains aligned. In instances where the manufacturer’s instructions for materials are more restrictive than those prescribed by the code, the material shall be installed in accordance with the more restrictive requirement.

306.4 Tunneling. Where pipe is to be installed by tunneling, jacking or a combination of both, the pipe shall be protected from damage during installation and from subsequent uneven loading. Where earth tunnels are used, adequate supporting structures shall be provided to prevent future settling or caving.

SECTION 307 STRUCTURAL SAFETY

307.1 General. In the process of installing or repairing any part of a plumbing and drainage installation, the finished floors, walls, ceilings, tile work or any other part of the building or premises that must be changed or replaced shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the requirements of the International Building Code.

307.2 Cutting, notching or bored holes. A framing member shall not be cut, notched or bored in excess of limitations specified in the International Building Code or Appendix C in this code.

307.3 Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and fire-resistance-rated assemblies. Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and assemblies required to have a fire-resistance rating shall be protected in accordance with the International Building Code.

[BS] 307.4 Alterations to trusses. Truss members and components shall not be cut, drilled, notched, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without written concurrence and approval of a registered design professional. Alterations resulting in the addition of loads to any member (e.g., HVAC equipment, water heater) shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

307.5 Protection of footings. Trenching installed parallel to footings and walls shall not extend into the bearing plane of a footing or wall. The upper boundary of the bearing plane is a line that extends downward, at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from horizontal, from the outside bottom edge of the footing or wall.

307.6 Piping materials exposed within plenums. Piping materials exposed within plenums shall comply with the provisions of the International Mechanical Code.

SECTION 308 PIPING SUPPORT

308.1 General. Plumbing piping shall be supported in accordance with this section.

308.2 Piping seismic supports. Where earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with the building code, plumbing piping supports shall be designed and installed for the seismic forces in accordance with the International Building Code.

308.3 Materials. Hangers, anchors and supports shall support the piping and the contents of the piping. Hangers and supporting material shall be of approved material that will not promote galvanic action.

308.4 Structural attachment. Hangers and anchors shall be attached to the building construction in an approved manner.

308.5 Interval of support. Pipe shall be supported in accordance with Table 308.5.

Exception: The interval of support for piping systems designed to provide for expansion/contraction shall conform to the engineered design in accordance with Section 316.1.

308.6 Sway bracing. Rigid support sway bracing shall be provided at changes in direction greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) for pipe sizes 4 inches (102 mm) and larger.

308.7 Anchorage. Anchorage shall be provided to restrain drainage piping from axial movement.

308.7.1 Location. For plastic pipe sizes greater than 6 inches (152 mm), and other pipe sizes greater than 4 inches (102 mm), restraints shall be provided for drain pipes at all changes in direction and at all changes in diameter greater than two pipe sizes. Braces, blocks, rodding backfilling and other suitable methods as specified by the coupling manufacturer shall be utilized.

308.8 Expansion joint fittings. Expansion joint fittings shall be used only where necessary to provide for expansion/contraction of the pipes. Expansion joint fittings shall be of the typical material suitable for use with the type of piping in which such fittings are installed.

308.9 Parallel water distribution systems. Piping bundles for manifold systems shall be supported in accordance with Table 308.5. Support at changes in direction shall be in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Hot and cold water piping shall not be grouped in the same bundle.

308.10 Stacks. Bases of stacks shall be supported by the building structure, virgin or compacted earth, or other material suitable to support the weight of the piping.
SECTION 309
FLOOD HAZARD RESISTANCE

309.1 General. Plumbing systems and equipment in structures erected in flood hazard areas shall be constructed in accordance with the requirements of this section and the International Building Code.

[BS] 309.2 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, the following systems and equipment shall be located and installed as required by Section 1612 of the International Building Code.

1. Water service pipes.
2. Deleted.
3. Deleted.
4. Sanitary drainage piping.
5. Storm drainage piping.
6. Manhole covers shall be sealed, except where elevated to or above the design flood elevation.
7. Other plumbing fixtures, faucets, fixture fittings, piping systems and equipment.
8. Water heaters.
9. Vents and vent systems.

Exception: The systems listed in this section are permitted to be located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the International Building Code for utilities and attendant equipment, provided that the systems are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within their components and the systems are constructed to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

[BS] 309.3 Coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones. Structures located in coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones shall meet the requirements of Section 309.2. The plumbing systems, pipes and fixtures shall not be mounted on or penetrate through walls intended to break away under flood loads.

SECTION 310
WASHROOM AND TOILET ROOM REQUIREMENTS

310.1 Light and ventilation. Washrooms and toilet rooms shall be illuminated and ventilated in accordance with the International Building Code and International Mechanical Code.

310.2 Location of fixtures and compartments. The location of plumbing fixtures and the requirements for compartments and partitions shall be in accordance with Section 405.

310.3 Interior finish. Interior finish surfaces of toilet rooms shall comply with the International Building Code.
SECTION 311
TOILET FACILITIES FOR WORKERS

311.1 General. Toilet facilities shall be provided for construction workers in accordance with the table below and such facilities shall be maintained in a sanitary condition. Construction worker toilet facilities of the nonsewer type shall conform to ANSI Z4.3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBER OF EMPLOYEES</th>
<th>MINIMUM NUMBER OF FACILITIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Less than 20</td>
<td>1 toilet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 to 200</td>
<td>1 toilet &amp; 1 urinal per 40 workers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 200</td>
<td>1 toilet &amp; 1 urinal per 50 workers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There shall be at least one facility for every two contiguous construction sites. Such facilities may be portable, enclosed, chemically treated, tank-tight units. Portable toilets shall be enclosed, screened and weatherproofed with internal latches.

Temporary toilet facilities need not be provided on site for crews on a job site for no more than one working day and having transportation readily available to toilet facilities.

SECTION 312
TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

312.1 Required tests. The permit holder shall make the applicable tests prescribed in Sections 312.2 through 312.10 to determine compliance with the provisions of this code. The permit holder shall give reasonable advance notice to the code official when the plumbing work is ready for tests. The equipment, material, power and labor necessary for the inspection and test shall be furnished by the permit holder and the permit holder shall be responsible for determining that the work will withstand the test pressure prescribed in the following tests. All plumbing system piping shall be tested with either water or by air. After the plumbing fixtures have been set and their traps filled with water, their connections shall be tested and proved gas tight or water tight by visual inspection.

312.1.1 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 10 psi (69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

312.2 Drainage and vent water test. A water test shall be applied to the drainage system within the building either in its entirety or in sections. If applied to the entire system, all openings in the piping shall be tightly closed, except the highest opening, and the system shall be filled with water to the point of overflow. If the system is tested in sections, each opening shall be tightly plugged except the highest openings of the section under test, and each section shall be filled with water, but no section shall be tested with less than a 10-foot (3048 mm) head of water. In testing successive sections, at least the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of the next preceding section shall be tested so that no joint or pipe in the building, except the uppermost 10 feet (3048 mm) of the system, shall have been submitted to a test of less than a 10-foot (3048 mm) head of water. This pressure shall be held for not less than 15 minutes. The system shall then be tight at all points.

Exception: Rough plumbing testing for one- and two-family dwellings shall be as specified above except the water level shall be a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest drainage fitting. Under slab piping systems shall be tested with a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) of head.

312.3 Drainage and vent air test. An air test shall be made by forcing air into the system until there is a uniform gauge pressure of 5 psi (34.5 kPa) or sufficient to balance a 1-inch (254 mm) column of mercury. This pressure shall be held for a test period of not less than 15 minutes. Any adjustments to the test pressure required because of changes in ambient temperatures or the seating of gaskets shall be made prior to the beginning of the test period.

312.4 Drainage and vent final test. After the plumbing fixtures have been set and their traps filled with water, their connections shall be tested and proved gas tight or water tight as follows:

1. Water tightness. Each fixture shall be filled and then drained. Traps and fixture connections shall be proven water tight by visual inspection.
2. Gas tightness. Where required by the local administrative authority, a final test for gas tightness of the DWV system shall be made by the smoke or peppermint test as follows:

   2.1. Smoke test. Introduce a pungent, thick smoke into the system. When the smoke appears at vent terminals, such terminals shall be sealed and a pressure equivalent to a 1-inch water column (249 Pa) shall be applied and maintained for a test period of not less than 15 minutes.

   2.2. Peppermint test. Introduce 2 ounces (59 mL) of oil of peppermint into the system. Add 10 quarts (9464 mL) of hot water and seal the vent terminals. The odor of peppermint shall not be detected at any trap or other point in the system.

312.5 Water supply system test. Upon completion of a section of or the entire water distribution system, the system, or portion completed, shall be tested and proved tight under a water or an air test of not less than 100 psi (688 kPa). Repaired sections of existing water systems shall be tested at existing operating pressure. This pressure shall be held for not less than 15 minutes. The water utilized for tests shall be obtained from a potable source of supply. The required tests shall be performed in accordance with this section and Section 107.

312.6 Gravity sewer test. Deleted.
312.7 Forced sewer test. Deleted.

312.8 Storm drainage system test. Storm drain systems within a building shall be tested by water or air in accordance with Section 312.2 or 312.3.

312.9 Shower liner or pan test. Where shower floors and receptors are made water tight by the application of materials required by Section 417.5.2, the completed liner installation shall be tested. The pipe from the shower drain shall be plugged water tight for the test. The floor and receptor area shall be filled with water to a depth of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) measured at the threshold. Where a threshold of at least 2 inches (51 mm) high does not exist, a temporary threshold shall be constructed to retain the test water in the lined floor or receptor area to a level not less than 2 inches (51 mm) deep measured at the threshold. The water shall be retained for a test period of not less than 15 minutes, and there shall not be evidence of leakage.

312.10 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention assemblies. Deleted.

312.10.1 Inspections. Deleted.

312.10.2 Testing. Deleted.

SECTION 313
EQUIPMENT EFFICIENCIES

313.1 General. Equipment efficiencies shall be in accordance with the International Energy Conservation Code.

SECTION 314
CONDENSATE DISPOSAL

[M] 314.1 Approved location. Approved location shall be in accordance with the North Carolina Mechanical Code.


SECTION 315
PENETRATIONS

315.1 Sealing of annular spaces. The annular space between the outside of a pipe and the inside of a pipe sleeve or between the outside of a pipe and an opening in a building envelope wall, floor, or ceiling assembly penetrated by a pipe shall be sealed in an approved manner with caulking material, foam sealant or closed with a gasketing system. The caulking material, foam sealant or gasketing system shall be designed for the conditions at the penetration location and shall be compatible with the pipe, sleeve and building materials in contact with the sealing materials. Annular spaces created by pipes penetrating fire-resistance-rated assemblies or membranes of such assemblies shall be sealed or closed in accordance with Section 714 of the International Building Code.

SECTION 316
ALTERNATIVE ENGINEERED DESIGN

316.1 Alternative engineered design. The design, documentation, inspection, testing and approval of an alternative engineered design plumbing system shall comply with Sections 316.1.1 through 316.1.6.

316.1.1 Design criteria. An alternative engineered design shall conform to the intent of the provisions of this code and shall provide an equivalent level of quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Material, equipment or components shall be designed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

316.1.2 Submittal. The registered design professional shall indicate on the permit application that the plumbing system is an alternative engineered design. The permit and permanent permit records shall indicate that an alternative engineered design was part of the approved installation.

316.1.3 Technical data. The registered design professional shall submit sufficient technical data to substantiate the proposed alternative engineered design and to prove that the performance meets the intent of this code.

316.1.4 Construction documents. The registered design professional shall submit to the code official two complete sets of signed and sealed construction documents for the alternative engineering design. The construction documents shall include floor plans and a riser diagram of the work. Where appropriate, the construction documents shall indicate the direction of flow, all pipe sizes, grade of horizontal piping, loading and location of fixtures and appliances.

316.1.5 Design approval. Where the code official determines that the alternative engineered design conforms to the intent of this code, the plumbing system shall be approved. If the alternative engineered design is not approved, the code official shall notify the registered design professional in writing, stating the reasons thereof.

316.1.6 Inspection and testing. The alternative engineered design shall be tested and inspected in accordance with the requirements of Sections 107 and 312.

SECTION 317
CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS

317.1 Carbon monoxide alarms. In new construction, one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses within which fuel-fired appliances or fireplaces are installed or that have attached garages shall be provided with an approved carbon monoxide alarm installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedroom(s) as directed by the alarm manufacturer.

317.2 Where required—existing dwellings. In existing dwellings, where interior alterations, repairs, or additions requiring a building permit occur, or where one or more sleeping rooms are added or created, or where fuel-fired appliances or fireplaces are added or replaced, carbon monoxide alarms shall be provided in accordance with Section 317.1.

Exception: Work involving the exterior surfaces of dwellings, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, shall not be subject to the provisions of this section.
tion of a porch or deck, or the installation of a fuel-fired appliance that cannot introduce carbon monoxide to the interior of the dwelling, are exempt from the requirements of this section.

317.3 Alarm requirements. The required carbon monoxide alarms shall be audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed. Single station carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer’s installation instructions. Battery powered, plug-in, or hard-wired alarms are acceptable for use.
CHAPTER 4
FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

SECTION 401
GENERAL

401.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the materials, design and installation of plumbing fixtures, faucets and fixture fittings in accordance with the type of occupancy, and shall provide for the minimum number of fixtures for various types of occupancies.

401.2 Prohibited fixtures and connections. Water closets having a concealed trap seal or an unventilated space or having walls that are not thoroughly washed at each discharge in accordance with ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 shall be prohibited. Any water closet that permits siphonage of the contents of the bowl back into the tank shall be prohibited. Trough urinals shall be prohibited.

401.3 Water conservation. The maximum water flow rates and flush volume for plumbing fixtures and fixture fittings shall comply with Section 604.4.

SECTION 402
FIXTURE MATERIALS

402.1 Quality of fixtures. Plumbing fixtures shall be constructed of approved materials, with smooth, impervious surfaces, free from defects and concealed fouling surfaces, and shall conform to standards cited in this code. All porcelain enameled surfaces on plumbing fixtures shall be acid resistant.

402.2 Materials for specialty fixtures. Materials for specialty fixtures not otherwise covered in this code shall be of stainless steel, soapstone, chemical stoneware or plastic, or shall be lined with lead, copper-base alloy, nickel-copper alloy, corrosion-resistant steel or other material especially suited to the application for which the fixture is intended.

402.3 Sheet copper. Sheet copper for general applications shall conform to ASTM B152 and shall not weigh less than 12 ounces per square foot (3.7 kg/m²).

402.4 Sheet lead. Sheet lead for pans shall not weigh less than 4 pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m²) and shall be coated with an asphalt paint or other approved coating.

SECTION 403
MINIMUM PLUMBING FACILITIES

403.1 Minimum number of fixtures. In new construction or building additions and in changes of occupancy as defined in the North Carolina Building Code, plumbing fixtures shall be provided for the type of occupancy and in the minimum number shown in Table 403.1 based on the actual use of the building or space. Uses not shown in Table 403.1 shall be considered individually by the code official. The number of occupants shall be determined by the International Building Code. Occupancy classification shall be determined in accordance with the International Building Code.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO.</th>
<th>CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>WATER CLOSETS (URINALS: SEE SECTION 419.2)</th>
<th>LAVATORIES</th>
<th>BATHTUBS/SHOWERS</th>
<th>DRINKING FOUNTAIN (SEE SECTION 410)</th>
<th>OTHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A-1&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Assembly (see Sections 403.2, 403.3 and 403.3.2)</td>
<td>Theaters and other buildings for the performing arts and motion pictures</td>
<td>1 per 125</td>
<td>1 per 65</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Theaters in K–12 schools</td>
<td>1 per 125</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>A-2&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nightclubs, bars, taverns, dance halls and buildings for similar purposes</td>
<td>1 per 40</td>
<td>1 per 40</td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Restaurants, banquet halls and food courts</td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cafeterias in K–12 schools</td>
<td>1 per 125</td>
<td>1 per 125</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
## TABLE 403.1 —continued

### MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES

*(See Sections 403.1.1 and 403.2)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO.</th>
<th>CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>WATER CLOSETS (URINALS: SEE SECTION 419.2)</th>
<th>LAVATORIES</th>
<th>BATHTUBS/SHOWERS</th>
<th>DRINKING FOUNTAIN (SEE SECTION 410)</th>
<th>OTHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MALE</td>
<td>FEMALE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Assembly (see Sections 403.2, 403.3 and 403.3.2)</td>
<td>Auditoriums without permanent seating, art galleries, exhibition halls, museums, lecture halls, libraries, arcades and gymnasiums</td>
<td>1 per 125</td>
<td>1 per 65</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A-3d</td>
<td>Gymnasiums in K–12 schools</td>
<td>1 per 125</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Passenger terminals and transportation facilities</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
<td>1 per 750</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 1,000</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Places of worship and other religious services. Churches without assembly halls</td>
<td>1 per 150</td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 1,000</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Coliseums, arenas, skating rinks, pools and tennis courts for indoor sporting events and activities</td>
<td>1 per 75 for the first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for the remainder exceeding 1,500</td>
<td>1 per 40 for the first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for the remainder exceeding 1,520</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>1 per 150</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A-4</td>
<td>Stadiums, amusement parks, bleachers and grandstands for outdoor sporting events and activities</td>
<td>1 per 75 for the first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for the remainder exceeding 1,500</td>
<td>1 per 40 for the first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for the remainder exceeding 1,520</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>1 per 150</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A-5</td>
<td>K–12 stadiums, bleachers and grandstands for outdoor sporting events and activities</td>
<td>1 per 125</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 per 250</td>
<td>1 per 200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Business (see Sections 403.2, 403.3 and 403.3.1)</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Buildings for the transaction of business, professional services, other services involving merchandise, office buildings, banks, light industrial and similar uses</td>
<td>1 per 25 for the first 50 and 1 per 50 for the remainder exceeding 50</td>
<td>1 per 40 for the first 80 and 1 per 80 for the remainder exceeding 80</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Educational</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>K–8 9–12 Teacher/staff</td>
<td>1 per 25</td>
<td>1 per 25</td>
<td>1 per 60</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE 403.1—continued
MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES*
(See Sections 403.1.1 and 403.2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO.</th>
<th>CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Factory and industrial</td>
<td>F-1 and F-2</td>
<td>Structures in which occupants are engaged in work fabricating, assembling or processing of products or materials (see Section 403.3.1 for adjustments in occupant content)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(see Section 411)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I-1</td>
<td>Residential care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I-2</td>
<td>Hospitals and other healthcare facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fixture requirements are regulated and enforced by state licensing and certification jurisdictions only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Employees³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Visitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I-3</td>
<td>Prisons³, Reformitories, detention centers, and correctional centers³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fixture requirements are regulated and enforced by state licensing and certification jurisdictions only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Employees³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Visitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I-4</td>
<td>Adult day care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fixture requirements are regulated and enforced by state licensing and certification jurisdictions only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Child care³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Employees³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Visitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Mercantile (see Sections 403.2, 403.3 and 403.3.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Retail stores, service stations, shops, salesrooms, markets and shopping centers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>R-1</td>
<td>Hotels, motels, boarding houses (transient)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per sleeping unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per sleeping unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per sleeping unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>R-2</td>
<td>Dormitories, fraternities, sororities and boarding houses (not transient)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>R-2</td>
<td>Apartment house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per dwelling unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per dwelling unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 per dwelling unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 kitchen sink per dwelling unit; 1 automatic clothes washer connection per 20 dwelling units</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
**TABLE 403.1 —continued**

**MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES**

*(See Sections 403.1.1 and 403.2)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NO.</th>
<th>CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>WATER CLOSETS</th>
<th>LAVATORIES</th>
<th>BATHTUBS/SHOWERS</th>
<th>DRINKING FOUNTAIN</th>
<th>OTHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(URINALS: SEE SECTION 419.2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(SEE SECTION 410)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MALE</td>
<td>FEMALE</td>
<td>MALE</td>
<td>FEMALE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Residential</td>
<td>(cont.)</td>
<td>Congregate living facilities with 16 or fewer persons</td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
<td>1 per 10</td>
<td>1 per 8</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 service sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R-3</td>
<td></td>
<td>One- and two-family dwellings and lodging houses with five or fewer guestrooms</td>
<td>1 per dwelling unit</td>
<td>1 per dwelling unit</td>
<td>1 per dwelling unit</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1 kitchen sink per dwelling unit; 1 automatic clothes washer connection per dwelling unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Storage</td>
<td>S-1 S-2</td>
<td>Structures for the storage of goods, warehouses, storehouse and freight depots. Low and Moderate Hazard</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>1 per 100</td>
<td>See Section 411</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

a. The fixtures shown are based on one fixture being the minimum required for the number of persons indicated or any fraction of the number of persons indicated. The number of occupants shall be determined by the International Building Code.
b. Toilet facilities for employees shall be separate from facilities for inmates, students or care recipients.
c. A single-occupant toilet room with one water closet and one lavatory serving not more than two adjacent patient sleeping units shall be permitted provided that each patient sleeping unit has direct access to the toilet room and provision for privacy for the toilet room user is provided.
d. The occupant load for seasonal outdoor seating and entertainment areas shall be included when determining the minimum number of facilities required.
e. The number of fixtures provided shall be based on either the capacity of the church sanctuary or the church educational building (including fellowship halls and multiple purpose rooms), whichever is larger and within 300 feet (91.44 m).
f. For attached one- and two-family dwellings, one automatic clothes washer connection shall be required per 20 dwelling units.
g. A mop receptacle with a water supply, or a hose bib and floor drain, may be used in lieu of a service sink.
h. A can wash may be used in lieu of a service sink.
i. See Section 403.9 for additional information on plumbing fixtures for schools.
j. When the rearrangement of an area or space increases the occupant content, the plumbing facilities shall be increased in accordance with this code.
k. For baseball stadiums, the number of fixtures shall be reduced by 50 percent.
l. Service sink may be omitted when located within a single-family dwelling.
m. Self-service mini-storage facilities without an office area are exempt.
n. Unheated storage buildings that are used periodically are not required to have toilet rooms.
o. For business and mercantile occupancies with an occupant load of 25 or fewer, service sinks shall not be required.
p. See Section 403.6 for adjustments in occupant count.
403.1.1 Fixture calculations. To determine the occupant load of each sex, the total occupant load shall be divided in half. To determine the required number of fixtures, the fixture ratio or ratios for each fixture type shall be applied to the occupant load of each sex in accordance with Table 403.1. Fractional numbers resulting from applying the fixture ratios of Table 403.1 shall be rounded up to the next whole number. For calculations involving multiple occupancies, such fractional numbers for each occupancy shall first be summed and then rounded up to the next whole number.

Exceptions:

1. The total occupant load shall not be required to be divided in half where approved statistical data indicates a distribution of the sexes of other than 50 percent of each sex.

2. In buildings that contain dwellings or sleeping units that have a pool dedicated to the residents, a percentage reduction of the total required fixtures provided for a pool and pool deck without bleachers and grandstands may be taken equal to the percentage of total residential units whose entries fall within 500 feet (152 m) of the pool deck.

403.1.2 Family or assisted-use toilet and bath fixtures. Fixtures located within family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms required by Section 1109.2.1 of the International Building Code are permitted to be included in the number of required fixtures for either the male or female occupants in assembly and mercantile occupancies.

403.2 Separate facilities. Where plumbing fixtures are required, separate facilities shall be provided for each sex.

Exceptions:

1. Separate facilities shall not be required for dwelling units and sleeping units.

2. Separate facilities shall not be required in structures or tenant spaces with a total occupant load, including both employees and customers, of 25 or fewer.

3. Separate facilities shall not be required in mercantile occupancies in which the maximum occupant load is 100 or fewer.

4. Except as provided in Section 405.3.2.

5. Where the code requires only one toilet facility for each sex, two unisex facilities may be substituted for separate sex facilities.

403.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet facilities serving as separate facilities. Where a building or tenant space requires a separate toilet facility for each sex and each toilet facility is required to have only one water closet, two family or assisted-use toilet facilities shall be permitted to serve as the required separate facilities. Family or assisted-use toilet facilities shall not be required to be identified for exclusive use by either sex as required by Section 403.4.

403.3 Required public toilet facilities. Customers, patrons and visitors shall be provided with public toilet facilities in structures and tenant spaces intended for public utilization.

The number of plumbing fixtures located within the required toilet facilities shall be provided in accordance with Section 403 for all users. Employees shall be provided with toilet facilities in all occupancies. Employee toilet facilities shall be either separate or combined employee and public toilet facilities.

Exception: Public toilet facilities shall not be required in:

1. Open or enclosed parking garages where there are no parking attendants.

2. Structures and tenant spaces intended for quick transactions, including takeout, pickup and drop-off, having a public access area less than or equal to 300 square feet (28 m²).

403.3.1 Access. The route to the public toilet facilities required by Section 403.3 shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms or closets. Access to the required facilities shall be from within the building or from the exterior of the building. Routes shall comply with the accessibility requirements of the International Building Code. The public shall have access to the required toilet facilities at all times that the building is occupied.

[BG] 403.3.2 Prohibited toilet room location. Toilet rooms shall not open directly into a room used for the preparation of food for service to the public.

403.3.3 Location of toilet facilities in occupancies other than malls. In occupancies other than covered and open mall buildings, the required public and employee toilet facilities shall be located not more than one story above or below the space required to be provided with toilet facilities, and the path of travel to such facilities shall not exceed a distance of 500 feet (152 m).

Exception: The location and maximum distances of travel to required employee facilities in factory and industrial occupancies are permitted to exceed that required by this section, provided that the location and maximum distance of travel are approved.

403.3.3.1 Location of employee toilet facilities in occupancies other than assembly or mercantile. Access to toilet facilities in occupancies other than mercantile and assembly occupancies shall be from within the employees’ working area.

Employee facilities shall be either separate facilities or combined employee and public facilities.

Exception: Facilities that are required for employees in storage structures or kiosks, and are located in adjacent structures under the same ownership, lease or control, shall be a maximum travel distance of 500 feet (152 m) from the employees’ working area.

403.3.3.2 Location of employee toilet facilities in mercantile and assembly occupancies. Employees shall be provided with toilet facilities in buildings and tenant spaces utilized as restaurants, nightclubs, places of public assembly and mercantile occupancies. The employee facilities shall be either separate facilities or combined employee and public facilities.
403.3.4 Location of toilet facilities in malls. In covered and open mall buildings, the required public and employee toilet facilities shall be located not more than one story above or below the space required to be provided with toilet facilities, and the path of travel to such facilities shall not exceed a distance of 300 feet (91 m). In mall buildings, the required facilities shall be based on total square footage within a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, and facilities shall be installed in each individual store or in a central toilet area located in accordance with this section. The maximum distance of travel to central toilet facilities in mall buildings shall be measured from the main entrance of any store or tenant space. In mall buildings, where employees’ toilet facilities are not provided in the individual store, the maximum distance of travel shall be measured from the employees’ work area of the store or tenant space.

403.3.5 Pay facilities. Where pay facilities are installed, such facilities shall be in excess of the required minimum facilities. Required facilities shall be free of charge.

403.3.6 Door locking. Where a toilet room is provided for the use of multiple occupants, the egress door for the room shall not be lockable from the inside of the room. This section does not apply to family or assisted-use toilet rooms.

403.4 Signage. Required public facilities shall be provided with signs that designate the sex, as required by Section 403.2. Signs shall be readily visible and located near the entrance to each toilet facility. Signs for accessible toilet facilities shall comply with Section 1111 of the International Building Code.

403.4.1 Directional signage. Directional signage indicating the route to the required public toilet facilities shall be posted in a lobby, corridor, aisle or similar space, such that the sign can be readily seen from the main entrance to the building or tenant space.

403.5 Drinking fountain location. Drinking fountains shall not be required to be located in individual tenant spaces provided that public drinking fountains are located within a distance of travel of 500 feet (152 m) of the most remote location in the tenant space and not more than one story above or below the tenant space. Where the tenant space is in a covered or open mall, such distance shall not exceed 300 feet (91 m). Drinking fountains shall be located on an accessible route.

403.6 Adjustments in occupant content. If an owner or tenant requests, the plumbing official shall make adjustments in the occupant content established by Table 403.1 for manufacturing, workshops, loft building, foundries, storage, aircraft hangars, garages and similar establishments. The owner or occupant shall provide written data accompanied by plans that substantiates a claim that the occupant content of a particular building or tenancy will, at all times, be less than provided for in the above table. Approval of such data and accompanying claims shall not prevent the plumbing official from requiring additional facilities based on the above table, should changes be made affecting the floor plan upon which the original approval was based whether such changes be made by the original or ultimate owner or building occupant or occupants.

403.7 Multiplex theaters. Plumbing fixtures for multiple adjoining motion picture theaters with a common lobby shall be based on the seating capacity of the largest single auditorium plus 30 percent of the seats in the remaining auditoriums.

403.8 Plumbing fixtures for public schools.

403.8.1 Occupant content. Occupant content of public schools for the purpose of determining the number of required facilities shall be the maximum design class size multiplied by the number of classrooms. A public school classroom is a room or space 500 square feet (46.5 m²) or larger normally used for instructional purposes. The maximum design class sizes are 29 students for grades K through 8 and 33 students for grades 9 through 12 (N.C.G.S. 115C-301). The occupant load for private schools shall be as listed in Table 1004.1.2 of the North Carolina Building Code.

403.8.2 Occupant load and distance. The total student occupant load shall be the sum of the occupant loads for all classrooms, labs, shops and vocational spaces. The total occupant load for all buildings on a campus may be utilized when calculating the total number of fixtures required. Toilet facilities for students and teachers may be located in an adjacent building but shall be located so that no person will have more than 200 feet (61 mm) of accessible, covered horizontal travel distance from any classroom lab, shop or vocational space closest door to access to the required number of fixtures. The occupant content of kindergarten and first grade classrooms with internal toilet facilities is not required to be used in determining the number of group facilities for the entire school.

403.8.3 Occupant load for teachers and staff. Fixtures provided for teachers and staff shall be determined by multiplying the number of classrooms by 1.75. Staffing ratio for grades K through 8 is 80-percent female and 20-percent male. Staffing ratio for grades 9 through 12 is 70-percent female and 30-percent male.

403.8.4 Gymnasiums, cafeterias, auditoriums and stadiums for schools. Fixtures in group toilet facilities provided for classroom areas may be used toward satisfying the total number of required fixtures for gymnasiums, cafeterias and auditoriums provided that such facilities are located within 200 feet (61 m) from the space and cannot be locked off from access during after-school-hours’ use of the gymnasium, cafeteria or auditorium. Simultaneous use of classrooms, gymnasium, cafeteria or auditoriums shall not be considered for calculation of occupant loads for toilet fixtures. Stadium facilities shall be located within 400 feet (122 m) of the closest bleacher exit from each set of bleachers that the facility serves.

403.8.5 Miscellaneous provisions.

403.8.5.1 Unisex facilities. A single unisex facility may be used when the classroom area served is 1,200 square feet (112 m²) or less and is used either for grades K through 2 or is a modular classroom used for any grade.
level. Unisex facilities may be provided for teacher/staff if their total occupant load within 200 feet (61 m) is 15 or less.

403.8.5.2 Student group facilities. Every public school group facility shall have a minimum of four flushing type fixtures. Four flushing male group toilets shall have a minimum of two water closets.

403.8.5.3 Substitutions. Water closets may be substituted for urinals for grades K through 2. Urinals may be substituted for water closets in male group toilet rooms for teachers/staff and gyms, auditoriums, cafeterias or stadiums. The number of water closets shall not be reduced to less than one-third of the required number of flushing fixtures.

403.8.5.4 Modular classroom buildings. Toilet rooms may be omitted in a modular classroom building when facilities of sufficient capacity for the additional occupants are provided in an adjacent building and located within 200 feet (61 m) of horizontal travel distance from the modular classroom.

403.8.5.5 Temporary modular classroom buildings. Toilet rooms may be omitted in modular classroom buildings housing grades 9 through 12 when these temporary buildings are to be replaced by permanent facilities which are under contract. Facilities of sufficient capacity for the additional occupants shall be provided within 450 feet (137 m) of horizontal travel distance from the modular classroom.

403.8.5.6 Water closets and urinals. Where required, water closets and urinals shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions with reference to adjacent walls.

405.1 Water supply protection. The supply lines and fittings for every plumbing fixture shall be installed so as to prevent backflow.

405.2 Access for cleaning. Plumbing fixtures shall be installed so as to afford easy access for cleaning both the fixture and the area around the fixture.

Exception: One- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.

405.3 Setting. Fixtures shall be set level and in proper alignment with reference to adjacent walls.

405.4 Floor and wall drainage connections. Connections between the drain and floor outlet plumbing fixtures shall be made with a floor flange or a waste connector and sealing gasket. The waste connector and sealing gasket joint shall comply with the joint tightness test of ASME A112.4.3 and shall be installed so as to afford easy access for cleaning both the fixture and the area around the fixture.

SECTION 404
ACCESSIBLE PLUMBING FACILITIES

404.1 Where required. Accessible plumbing facilities and fixtures shall be provided in accordance with the International Building Code.

SECTION 405
INSTALLATION OF FIXTURES

405.1 Water supply protection. The supply lines and fittings for every plumbing fixture shall be installed so as to prevent backflow.

405.2 Access for cleaning. Plumbing fixtures shall be installed so as to afford easy access for cleaning both the fixture and the area around the fixture.

Exception: One- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.

405.3 Setting. Fixtures shall be set level and in proper alignment with reference to adjacent walls.

405.3.1 Water closets, urinals, lavatories and bidets. A water closet, urinal, lavatory or bidet shall not be set closer than 15 inches (381 mm) from its center to any side wall, partition, vanity or other obstruction, or closer than 30 inches (762 mm) center to center between adjacent fixtures. There shall be not less than a 21-inch (533 mm) clearance in front of the water closet, urinal, lavatory or bidet to any wall, fixture or door. Water closet compartiments shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in width and not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) in depth for floor-mounted water closets and not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in width and 56 inches (1422 mm) in depth for wall-hung water closets.

Exception: For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, see the North Carolina Residential Code, Figure R307.1 for minimum fixture clearances.

405.3.2 Public lavatories. In employee and public toilet rooms, the required lavatory shall be located in the same room as the required water closet except in Education K–5. Lavatories may be provided in a common toilet room vestibule, visible from the corridor.

405.3.3 Location of fixtures and piping. Piping, fixtures or equipment shall not be located in such a manner as to interfere with the normal operation of windows, doors or other means of egress openings.

405.3.4 Water closet compartment. Each water closet utilized by the public or employees shall occupy a separate compartment with walls or partitions and a door enclosing the fixtures to ensure privacy.

Exceptions:

1. Water closet compartments shall not be required in a single-occupant toilet room with a lockable door.

2. Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more water closets shall be permitted to have one water closet without an enclosing compartment.

3. This provision is not applicable to toilet areas located within Group I-3 housing areas.

405.3.5 Urinal partitions. Each urinal utilized by the public or employees shall occupy a separate area with walls or partitions to provide privacy. The walls or partitions shall begin at a height not greater than 12 inches (305 mm) from and extend not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the finished floor surface. The walls or partitions shall extend from the wall surface at each side of the urinal not less than 18 inches (457 mm) or to a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the outermost front lip of the urinal measured from the finished wallback surface, whichever is greater.

Exceptions:

1. Urinal partitions shall not be required in a single-occupant or family/assisted-use toilet room with a lockable door.

2. Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more urinals shall be permitted to have one urinal without partitions.

405.4 Floor and wall drainage connections. Connections between the drain and floor outlet plumbing fixtures shall be made with a floor flange or a waste connector and sealing gasket. The waste connector and sealing gasket joint shall comply with the joint tightness test of ASME A112.4.3 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. The flange shall be attached to the drain and
anchored to the structure. Connections between the drain and wall-hung water closets shall be made with an approved extension nipple or horn adaptor. The water closet shall be bolted to the hanger with corrosion-resistant bolts or screws. Joints shall be sealed with an approved elastomeric gasket, flange-to-fixure connection complying with ASME A112.4.3 or an approved setting compound.

405.4.1 Floor flanges. Floor flanges for water closets or similar fixtures shall be not less than 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) thick for brass, 0.25 inch (6.4 mm) thick for plastic and 0.25 inch (6.4 mm) thick and not less than a 2-inch (51 mm) caulking depth for cast iron or galvanized malleable iron.

Floor flanges of hard lead shall weigh not less than 1 pound, 9 ounces (0.7 kg) and shall be composed of lead alloy with not less than 7.75-percent antimony by weight. Flanges shall be secured to the building structure with corrosion-resistant screws or bolts.

405.4.2 Securing floor outlet fixtures. Floor outlet fixtures shall be secured to the floor or floor flanges by screws or bolts of corrosion-resistant material.

405.4.3 Securing wall-hung water closet bowls. Wall-hung water closet bowls shall be supported by a concealed metal carrier that is attached to the building structural members so that strain is not transmitted to the closet connector or any other part of the plumbing system. The carrier shall conform to ASME A112.6.1M or ASME A112.6.2.

405.5 Water-tight joints. Joints formed where fixtures come in contact with walls or floors shall be sealed.

405.6 Plumbing in mental health centers. Where such access cannot be provided, floor flanges shall be sealed.

405.7 Design of overflows. Where any fixture is provided with an overflow, the waste shall be designed and installed so that standing water in the fixture will not rise in the overflow when the stopper is closed, and no water will remain in the overflow when the fixture is empty.

405.7.1 Connection of overflows. The overflow from any fixture shall discharge into the drainage system on the inlet or fixture side of the trap.

Exception: The overflow from a flush tank serving a water closet or urinal shall discharge into the fixture served.

405.8 Slip joint connections. Slip joints shall be made with an approved elastomeric gasket and shall only be installed on the trap outlet, trap inlet and within the trap seal. Fixtures with concealed slip-joint connections shall be provided with an access panel or utility space not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in its smallest dimension or other approved arrangement so as to provide access to the slip joint connections for inspection and repair. Where such access cannot be provided, access doors shall not be required, provided that all joints are soldered, solvent cemented or screwed to form a solid connection.

405.9 Design and installation of plumbing fixtures. Integral fixture fitting mounting surfaces on manufactured plumbing fixtures or plumbing fixtures constructed on site shall meet the design requirements of ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 or ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.

SECTION 406

AUTOMATIC CLOTHES WASHERS

406.1 Water connection. The water supply to an automatic clothes washer shall be protected against backflow by an air gap that is integral with the machine or a backflow preventer shall be installed in accordance with Section 608. Air gaps shall comply with ASME A112.1.2 or A112.1.3.

406.2 Waste connection. The waste from an automatic clothes washer shall connect to a vertical drain of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter, or a horizontal drain of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter. The 2-inch (51 mm) trap in the waste connection may be used as a cleanout for both the 2-inch (51 mm) and the 3-inch (76 mm) drains.

In retrofit or remodel work, automatic domestic clothes washers shall be permitted to drain to a laundry sink. Automatic clothes washers that discharge by gravity shall be permitted to drain to a waste receptor or an approved trench drain.

SECTION 407

BATHTUBS


407.2 Bathtub waste outlets and overflows. Bathtubs shall be equipped with a waste outlet and an overflow outlet. The outlets shall be connected to waste tubing or piping not less than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter. The waste outlet shall be equipped with a water-tight stopper.

407.3 Glazing. Deleted.

407.4 Bathtub enclosure. Deleted.

407.5 (P2713.3) Bathtub and whirlpool bathtub valves. Hot water supplied to bathtubs and whirlpool bathtubs shall be limited to a temperature of not greater than 120°F (49°C) by a water-temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3, except where such protection is otherwise provided by a combination tub/shower valve in accordance with Section 424.3.

SECTION 408

BIDETS

408.1 Approval. Bidets shall conform to ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.

408.2 Water connection. The water supply to a bidet shall be protected against backflow by an air gap or backflow preventer in accordance with Section 608.13.1, 608.13.2, 608.13.3, 608.13.5, 608.13.6 or 608.13.8.

408.3 Bidet water temperature. The discharge water temperature from a bidet fitting shall be limited to a maximum temperature of 110°F (43°C) by a water temperature limiting device conforming to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3.
SECTION 409
DISHWASHING MACHINES

409.1 Approval. Commercial dishwashing machines shall conform to ASSE 1004 and NSF 3.

409.2 Water connection. The water supply to a dishwashing machine shall be protected against backflow by an air gap that is integral with the machine or a backflow preventer shall be installed in accordance with Section 608. Air gaps shall comply with ASME A112.1.2 or A112.1.3.

409.3 Waste connection. The waste connection of a dishwashing machine shall comply with Section 802.1.6 or 802.1.7, as applicable.

SECTION 410
DRINKING FOUNTAINS

410.1 Approval. Drinking fountains shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2 or ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and water coolers shall conform to AHRI 1010. Drinking fountains and water coolers shall conform to NSF 61, Section 9. Electrically operated, refrigerated drinking water coolers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 399.

410.2 Small occupancies. Deleted.

[BE] 410.3 Provide high and low drinking fountains. Where drinking fountains are required, not fewer than two drinking fountains shall be provided. One drinking fountain shall comply with the requirements for people who use a wheelchair and one drinking fountain shall comply with the requirements for standing persons.

Exceptions:

1. A single drinking fountain with two separate spouts that complies with the requirements for people who use a wheelchair and standing persons shall be permitted to be substituted for two separate drinking fountains.

2. Where drinking fountains are primarily for children’s use, the drinking fountains for people using wheelchairs shall be permitted to comply with the children’s provisions in ICC A117.1 and drinking fountains for standing children shall be permitted to provide the spout at 30 inches (762 mm) minimum above the floor.

410.4 Substitution. Where restaurants, night clubs, taverns or bars provide drinking water in a container free of charge, drinking fountains shall not be required in those establishments.

410.5 Prohibited location. Drinking fountains, water coolers and water dispensers shall not be installed in public restrooms.

SECTION 411
EMERGENCY SHOWERS AND EYEWASH STATIONS

411.1 Approval. Emergency showers and eyewash stations shall conform to ISEA Z358.1. Water supplies to eyewash stations shall be tepid water temperature [from 60°F (15.56°C) to a maximum of 100°F (37.78°C)].

411.2 Waste connection. Waste connections shall not be required for emergency showers and eyewash stations.

SECTION 412
FLOOR AND TRENCH DRAINS

412.1 Approval. Floor drains shall conform to ASME A112.3.1, ASME A112.6.3 or CSA B79. Trench drains shall comply with ASME A112.6.3.

412.2 Floor drains. Floor drains shall have removable strainers. The floor drain shall be constructed so that the drain is capable of being cleaned. Access shall be provided to the drain inlet. Ready access shall be provided to floor drains.

Exception: Floor drains serving refrigerated display cases shall be provided with access.

412.3 Size of floor drains. Floor drains shall have a drain outlet not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter.

412.4 Public laundries and central washing facilities. In public coin-operated laundries and in the central washing facilities of multiple-family dwellings, the rooms containing automatic clothes washers shall be provided with floor drains located to readily drain the entire floor area. Such drains shall have an outlet of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter.

412.5 Location. Floor drains shall be located to drain the entire floor area.

412.6 Trap primers. The water seal of floor drain traps shall be maintained in conformance to Section 1002.4. Trap seals, or another method acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

Exception: Hose bibbs located in rooms with nonabsorbent floors may be used in lieu of an automatic trap primer.

SECTION 413
FOOD WASTE DISPOSER UNITS

413.1 Approval. Domestic food waste disposers shall conform to ASSE 1008 and shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 430. Food waste disposers shall not increase the drainage fixture unit load on the sanitary drainage system.

413.2 Domestic food waste disposer waste outlets. Domestic food waste disposers shall be connected to a drain not less than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

413.3 Commercial food waste disposer waste outlets. Commercial food waste disposers shall be connected to a drain not less than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter. Commercial food waste disposers shall be connected and trapped separately from any other fixtures or sink compartments.

413.4 Water supply required. Food waste disposers shall be provided with a supply of cold water. The water supply shall be protected against backflow by an air gap or backflow preventer in accordance with Section 608.
SECTION 414  
GARbage can washers

414.1 Water connection. The water supply to a garbage can washer shall be protected against backflow by an air gap or a backflow preventer in accordance with Section 608.13.1, 608.13.2, 608.13.3, 608.13.5, 608.13.6 or 608.13.8.

414.2 Waste connection. Garbage can washers shall be trapped separately. The receptacle receiving the waste from the washer shall have a removable basket or strainer to prevent the discharge of particles 1/4-inch (13 mm) or larger into the drainage system.

SECTION 415  
Laundry Trays


415.2 Waste outlet. Each compartment of a laundry tray shall be provided with a waste outlet not less than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter and a strainer or crossbar to restrict the clear opening of the waste outlet.

SECTION 416  
Lavatories

416.1 Approval. Lavatories shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

416.2 Cultured marble lavatories. Cultured marble vanity tops with an integral lavatory shall conform to CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

416.3 Lavatory waste outlets. Lavatories shall have waste outlets not less than 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) in diameter. A strainer, pop-up stopper, crossbar or other device shall be provided to restrict the clear opening of the waste outlet.

416.4 Moveable lavatory systems. Moveable lavatory systems shall comply with ASME A112.19.12.

416.5 Tempered water for public hand-washing facilities. When hot water is provided to a public hand-washing facility, such water shall be tempered water delivered through an approved water-temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3.

SECTION 417  
Showers

417.1 Approval. Prefabricated showers and shower compartments shall conform to ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124. Shower valves for individual showers shall conform to the requirements of Section 424.3.

417.2 Water supply riser. Water supply risers from the shower valve to the shower head outlet, whether exposed or concealed, shall be attached to the structure. The attachment to the structure shall be made by the use of support devices designed for use with the specific piping material or by fittings anchored with corrosion-resistant screws of a minimum nominal length of 3/4-inch (19 mm).

417.3 Shower waste outlet. Waste outlets serving showers shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter and, for other than waste outlets in bathtubs, shall have removable strainers not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter with strainer openings not less than 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) in least dimension. Where each shower space is not provided with an individual waste outlet, the waste outlet shall be located and the floor pitched so that waste from one shower does not flow over the floor area serving another shower. Waste outlets shall be fastened to the waste pipe in an approved manner.

Exception: Retaining pre-existing 1 1/4-inch (38 mm) in diameter waste outlets shall be permitted when removing an existing bathtub and installing a shower in its place.

417.4 Shower compartments. Shower compartments shall not be less than 900 square inches (0.58 m²) in interior cross-sectional area. Shower compartments shall not be less than 30 inches (762 mm) in least dimension as measured from the finished interior dimension of the compartment, exclusive of fixture valves, showerheads, soap dishes and safety grab bars or rails. Except as required in Section 404, the minimum required area and dimension shall be measured from the finished interior dimension at a height equal to the top of the threshold and at a point tangent to its centerline and shall be continued to a height not less than 70 inches (1778 mm) above the shower drain outlet.

Exceptions:

1. Shower compartments having not less than 25 inches (635 mm) in minimum dimension measured from the finished interior dimension of the compartment, provided that the shower compartment has not less than 1,300 square inches (0.838 m²) of cross-sectional area.

2. Shower compartments with prefabricated receptors conforming to the standards listed in Table 417.4.

3. Where load-bearing, bonded, waterproof membranes meeting ANSI A118.10 are used, integrated bonding flange drains shall be approved. Clamping devices and weep holes are not required where shower drains include an integrated bonding flange. Manufacturer’s installation instructions shall be followed to achieve a watertight seal between the bonded waterproof membrane and the integrated bonding flange drain. Integrated bonding flange drains shall conform to ASME A112.6.3, ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, or CSA B79.

417.4.1 Floor and wall area. Bathtub floors, shower floors, walls above built-in tubs that have installed shower heads and walls in shower compartments shall be constructed of smooth, corrosion-resistant and nonabsorbent waterproof materials. Wall materials shall extend to a height of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the room floor level, and not less than 70 inches (1778 mm) above the bathtub drain outlet.
the drain of the tub or shower. Such walls shall form a wa-
tertight joint with each other and with either the tub or
shower floor.

TABLE 417.4
PREFABRICATED SHOWER
RECEPTOR STANDARDS MATERIALS STANDARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plastic shower receptors and</th>
<th>ANSI Z124</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shower stalls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shower pans, nonmetallic</td>
<td>ASTM D4551</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

417.4.2 Access. The shower compartment access and
egress opening shall have a clear and unobstructed fin-
ished width of not less than 22 inches (559 mm). Shower
compartment required to be designed in conformance to
accessibility provisions shall comply with Section 404.1.

417.5 Shower floors or receptors. Floor surfaces shall be
constructed of impervious, noncorrosive, nonabsorbent and
waterproof materials.

417.5.1 Support. Floors or receptors under shower compart-
ments shall be laid on, and supported by, a smooth and
structurally sound base.

417.5.2 Shower lining. Floors under shower compart-
ments, except where prefabricated receptors have been
provided, shall be lined and made water tight utilizing
material complying with Sections 417.5.2.1 through
417.5.2.6. Such liners shall turn up on all sides not less
than 2 inches (51 mm) above the finished threshold level.
Liners shall be recessed and fastened to an approved back-
ing so as not to occupy the space required for wall cover-
ing, and shall not be nailed or perforated at any point less
than 1 inch (25 mm) above the finished threshold. Liners
shall be pitched a minimum of one-fourth unit vertical in
12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) and shall be sloped
upward toward the fixture drains and be securely fastened to
the waste outlet at the seepage entrance, making a water-tight
joint between the liner and the outlet. The completed liner
shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.9.

Exceptions:

1. Floor surfaces under shower heads provided for
rinsing laid directly on the ground are not required to comply with this section.

2. Where a sheet-applied, load-bearing, bonded,
waterproof membrane is installed as the shower lining, the membrane shall not be required to be
recessed.

417.5.2.1 PVC sheets. Plasticized polyvinyl chloride
(PVC) sheets shall be a minimum of 0.040 inch (1.02
mm) thick and shall meet the requirements of ASTM
D4551. Sheets shall be joined by solvent welding in
accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instruc-
tions.

417.5.2.2 Chlorinated polyethylene (CPE) sheets. Nonplasticized chlorinated polyethylene sheet shall be
a minimum of 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick and shall
meet the requirements of ASTM D4068. The liner shall
be joined in accordance with the manufacturer’s instal-
lation instructions.

417.5.2.3 Sheet lead. Sheet lead shall weigh not less
than 4 pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m²) and shall be
coated with an asphalt paint or other approved coating.
The lead sheet shall be insulated from conducting sub-
stances other than the connecting drain by 15-pound
(6.80 kg) asphalt felt or an equivalent. Sheet lead shall
be joined by burning.

417.5.2.4 Sheet copper. Sheet copper shall conform to
ASTM B152 and shall weigh not less than 12 ounces
per square foot (3.7 kg/m²). The copper sheet shall be
insulated from conducting substances other than the
connecting drain by 15-pound (6.80 kg) asphalt felt or
an equivalent. Sheet copper shall be joined by brazing
or soldering.

417.5.2.5 Sheet-applied, load-bearing, bonded,
waterproof membranes. Sheet-applied, load-bearing,
bonded, waterproof membranes shall meet require-
ments of ANSI A118.10 and shall be applied in accor-
dance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

417.5.2.6 Liquid-type, trowel-applied, load-bearing,
bonded waterproof materials. Liquid-type, trowel-
applied, load-bearing, bonded waterproof materials
shall meet the requirements of ANSI A118.10 and shall
be applied in accordance with the manufacturer’s instruc-
tions.

417.6 Glazing. Windows and doors within a shower enclo-
sure shall conform to the safety glazing requirements of the
International Building Code.

SECTION 418
SINKS

418.1 Approval. Sinks shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/
CSA B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME
A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

418.2 Sink waste outlets. Sinks shall be provided with waste
outlets having a diameter not less than 1/2 inches (38 mm). A
strainer or crossbar shall be provided to restrict the clear
opening of the waste outlet.

418.3 Moveable sink systems. Moveable sink systems shall
comply with ASME A112.19.12.

SECTION 419
URINALS

419.1 Approval. Urinals shall conform to ASME A112.19.2/
CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.19 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO
Z124. Urinals shall conform to the water consumption
requirements of Section 604.4. Water-supplied urinals shall
conform to the hydraulic performance requirements of
ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

Urinals that do not use water shall be permitted, provided
the urinals:

1. Provide a barrier liquid sealant contained in a remov-
able trap to maintain the trap seal;
2. Permit the uninhibited flow of water through the trap to the sanitary drainage system;
3. Comply with ANSI Z124 and ASME A112.19.2, as applicable;
4. Shall be provided with water supply for future connection.

419.2 Substitution for water closets. In each bathroom or toilet room, urinals shall not be substituted for more than 67 percent of the required water closets in assembly and educational occupancies. Urinals shall not be substituted for more than 50 percent of the required water closets in all other occupancies.

[BG] 419.3 Surrounding material. Deleted.

SECTION 420 WATER CLOSETS


420.2 Water closets for public or employee toilet facilities. Water closet bowls for public or employee toilet facilities shall be of the elongated type.

420.3 Water closet seats. Water closets shall be equipped with seats of smooth, nonabsorbent material. All seats of water closets provided for public or employee toilet facilities shall be of the hinged open-front type. Integral water closet seats shall be of the same material as the fixture. Water closet seats shall be sized for the water closet bowl type.

420.4 Water closet connections. A 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) closet bend shall be acceptable. Where a 3-inch (76 mm) bend is utilized on water closets, a 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) closet bend shall be acceptable. A 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) flange shall be installed to receive the fixture horn.

SECTION 421 WHIRLPOOL BATHTUBS

421.4 Suction fittings. Suction fittings for whirlpool bathtubs shall comply with ASME A112.19.7/CSA B45.10.

421.5 Access to pump. Access shall be provided to circulation pumps in accordance with the fixture or pump manufacturer’s installation instructions. Where the manufacturer’s instructions do not specify the location and minimum size of field-fabricated access openings, an opening not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm) shall be installed to provide access to the circulation pump. Where pumps are located more than 2 feet (609 mm) from the access opening, an opening not less than 18 inches by 18 inches (457 mm by 457 mm) shall be installed. A door or panel shall be permitted to close the opening. In all cases, the access opening shall be unobstructed and of the size necessary to permit the removal and replacement of the circulation pump. A minimum clearance of 21 inches (514.5 mm) is required in front of the access door. Removal of a toilet cannot be used to obtain the required clearance.

421.6 Whirlpool enclosure. Doors within a whirlpool enclosure shall conform to ASME A112.19.15.

421.7 (P2713.3) Bathtub and whirlpool bathtub valves. Hot water supplied to bathtubs and whirlpool bathtubs shall be limited to a temperature of not greater than 120°F (49°C) by a water-temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3, except where such protection is otherwise provided by a combination tub/shower valve in accordance with Section 424.3.

SECTION 422 HEALTH CARE FIXTURES AND EQUIPMENT

422.1 Scope. This section shall govern those aspects of health care plumbing systems that differ from plumbing systems in other structures. Health care plumbing systems shall conform to the requirements of this section in addition to the other requirements of this code. The provisions of this section shall apply to the special devices and equipment installed and maintained in the following occupancies: nursing homes, homes for the aged, orphanages, infirmaries, first aid stations, psychiatric facilities, clinics, professional offices of dentists and doctors, mortuaries, educational facilities, surgery, dentistry, research and testing laboratories, establishments manufacturing pharmaceutical drugs and medicines and other structures with similar apparatus and equipment classified as plumbing.

422.2 Approval. All special plumbing fixtures, equipment, devices and apparatus shall be of an approved type.

422.3 Protection. All devices, appurtenances, appliances and apparatus intended to serve some special function, such as sterilization, distillation, processing, cooling, or storage of ice or foods, and that connect to either the water supply or drainage system, shall be provided with protection against backflow, flooding, fouling, contamination of the water supply system and stoppage of the drain.

422.4 Materials. Fixtures designed for therapy, special cleansing or disposal of waste materials, combinations of such purposes, or any other special purpose, shall be of smooth, impervious, corrosion-resistant materials and, where
subjected to temperatures in excess of 180°F (82°C), shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, higher temperatures.

422.5 Access. Access shall be provided to concealed piping in connection with special fixtures where such piping contains steam traps, valves, relief valves, check valves, vacuum breakers or other similar items that require periodic inspection, servicing, maintenance or repair. Access shall be provided to concealed piping that requires periodic inspection, maintenance or repair.

422.6 Clinical sink. A clinical sink shall have an integral trap in which the upper portion of a visible trap seal provides a water surface. The fixture shall be designed so as to permit complete removal of the contents by siphonic or blowout action and to reseal the trap. A flushing rim shall provide water to cleanse the interior surface. The fixture shall have the flushing and cleansing characteristics of a water closet.

422.7 Prohibited usage of clinical sinks and service sinks. A clinical sink serving a soiled utility room shall not be considered as a substitute for, or be utilized as, a service sink. A service sink shall not be utilized for the disposal of urine, fecal matter or other human waste.

422.8 Ice prohibited in soiled utility room. Machines for manufacturing ice, or any device for the handling or storage of ice, shall not be located in a soiled utility room.

422.9 Sterilizer equipment requirements. The approval and installation of all sterilizers shall conform to the requirements of the International Mechanical Code.

422.9.1 Sterilizer piping. Access for the purposes of inspection and maintenance shall be provided to all sterilizer piping and devices necessary for the operation of sterilizers.

422.9.2 Steam supply. Steam supplies to sterilizers, including those connected by pipes from overhead mains or branches, shall be drained to prevent any moisture from reaching the sterilizer. The condensate drainage from the steam supply shall be discharged by gravity.

422.9.3 Steam condensate return. Steam condensate returns from sterilizers shall be a gravity return system.

422.9.4 Condensers. Pressure sterilizers shall be equipped with a means of condensing and cooling the exhaust steam vapors. Nonpressure sterilizers shall be equipped with a device that will automatically control the vapor, confining the vapors within the vessel.

422.10 Special elevations. Control valves, vacuum outlets and devices protruding from a wall of an operating, emergency, recovery, examining or delivery room, or in a corridor or other location where patients are transported on a wheeled stretcher, shall be located at an elevation that prevents bumping the patient or stretcher against the device.

SECTION 423
SPECIALTY PLUMBING FIXTURES

423.1 Water connections. Baptisteries, ornamental and lily pools, aquariums, ornamental fountain basins, swimming pools, and similar constructions, where provided with water supplies, shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section 608.

423.2 Approval. Specialties requiring water and waste connections shall be submitted for approval.

423.3 Footbaths, pedicure baths and head shampoo sinks. The water supplied to specialty plumbing fixtures, such as pedicure chairs having an integral foot bathtub, footbaths, and head shampoo sinks, shall be limited to a maximum temperature of 120°F (49°C) by a water temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3.

SECTION 424
FAUCETS AND OTHER FIXTURE FITTINGS

424.1 Approval. Faucets and fixture fittings shall conform to ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1. Faucets and fixture fittings that supply drinking water for human ingestion shall conform to the requirements of NSF 61, Section 9. Flexible water connectors exposed to continuous pressure shall conform to the requirements of Section 605.6.

424.1.1 Faucets and supply fittings. Faucets and supply fittings shall conform to the water consumption requirements of Section 604.4.

424.1.2 Waste fittings. Waste fittings shall conform to ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, ASTM F409 or to one of the standards listed in Tables 702.1 and 702.4 for above-ground drainage and vent pipe and fittings.

424.2 Hand showers. Hand-held showers shall conform to ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1. Hand-held showers shall provide backflow protection in accordance with ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 or shall be protected against backflow by a device complying with ASME A112.18.3.

424.3 Individual shower valves. Individual shower and tub-shower combination valves shall be balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination balanced-pressure/thermostatic valves that conform to the requirements of ASSE 1016/ASME A112.1016/CSA B125.16 or ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and shall be installed at the point of use. Shower and tub-shower combination valves required by this section shall be equipped with a means to limit the maximum setting of the valve to 120°F (49°C), which shall be field adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. In-line thermostatic valves shall not be utilized for compliance with this section. Scald preventative valves are not required in dwelling units with individual water heaters set at 120°F (49°C).

424.4 Multiple (gang) showers. Multiple (gang) showers supplied with a single-tempered water supply pipe shall have the water supply for such showers controlled by an approved automatic temperature control mixing valve that conforms to ASSE 1069 or CSA B125.3, or each shower head shall be individually controlled by a balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination balanced-pressure/thermostatic valve that conforms to ASSE 1016/ASME A112.1016/CSA B125.16 or ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and is installed at the point of use. Such valves shall be equipped with a means to limit the maximum setting of the valve to 120°F (49°C), which shall

Copyright © 2018 ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Daniel Schaeffer (daniels@gojohns.com), ( -) Order Number #100564566 on Jul 17, 2018 12:41:31 PM pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further reproduction or distribution authorized. Single use only, copying and networking prohibited. ANY UNAUTHORIZED REPRODUCTION OR DISTRIBUTION IS A VIOLATION OF THE FEDERAL COPYRIGHT ACT AND THE LICENSE AGREEMENT, AND SUBJECT TO CIVIL AND CRIMINAL PENALTIES THEREUNDER.
be field adjusted in accordance with the manufacturers’ instructions.

**424.5 Bathtub and whirlpool bathtub valves.** The hot water supplied to bathtubs and whirlpool bathtubs shall be limited to a maximum temperature of 120°F (49°C) by a water-temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3, except where such protection is otherwise provided by a combination tub/shower valve in accordance with Section 424.3. Scalp preventative valves are not required in dwelling units with individual water heaters set at 120°F (49°C).

**424.6 Hose-connected outlets.** Faucets and fixture fittings with hose-connected outlets shall conform to ASME A112.18.3 or ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

**424.7 Temperature-actuated, flow reduction valves for individual fixture fittings.** Temperature-actuated, flow reduction devices, where installed for individual fixture fittings, shall conform to ASSE 1062. Such valves shall not be used alone as a substitute for the balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination shower valves required in Section 424.3.

**424.8 Transfer valves.** Deck-mounted bath/shower transfer valves containing an integral atmospheric vacuum breaker shall conform to the requirements of ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

**424.9 Water closet personal hygiene devices.** Personal hygiene devices integral to water closets or water closet seats shall conform to the requirements of ASME A112.4.2.

**SECTION 425 FLUSHING DEVICES FOR WATER CLOSETS AND URINALS**

**425.1 Flushing devices required.** Each water closet, urinal, clinical sink and any plumbing fixture that depends on trap siphonage to discharge the fixture contents to the sanitary drainage system shall be provided with a flushometer valve, flushometer tank or a flush tank designed and installed to supply water in quantity and rate of flow to flush the contents of the fixture, cleanse the fixture and refill the trap fixture.

A flushometer valve, flush tank or similar device shall not be required for urinal fixtures that comply with the waterless test requirements of ANSI Z124 and that:

1. Provide a barrier liquid sealant contained in a removable trap to maintain the trap seal;
2. Permit the uninhibited flow of water through the trap to the sanitary drainage system;
3. Comply with ANSI Z124 and ASME 112.19.2, as applicable.

**425.1.1 Separate for each fixture.** A flushing device shall not serve more than one fixture.

**425.2 Flushometer valves and tanks.** Flushometer valves and tanks shall comply with ASSE 1037 or CSA B125.3.

Vacuum breakers on flushometer valves shall conform to the performance requirements of ASSE 1001 or CSA B64.1.1. Access shall be provided to vacuum breakers. Flushometer valves shall be of the water conservation type and shall not be used where the water pressure is lower than the minimum required for normal operation. When operated, the valve shall automatically complete the cycle of operation, opening fully and closing positively under the water supply pressure. Each flushometer valve shall be provided with a means for regulating the flow through the valve. The trap seal to the fixture shall be automatically refilled after each flushing cycle.

**425.3 Flush tanks.** Flush tanks equipped for manual flushing shall be controlled by a device designed to refill the tank after each discharge and to shut off completely the water flow to the tank when the tank is filled to operational capacity. The trap seal to the fixture shall be automatically refilled after each flushing. The water supply to flush tanks equipped for automatic flushing shall be controlled with a timing device or sensor control devices.

**425.3.1 Fill valves.** Flush tanks shall be equipped with an antisiphon fill valve conforming to ASSE 1002 or CSA B125.3. The fill valve backflow preventer shall be located not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the full opening of the overflow pipe.

**425.3.2 Overflows in flush tanks.** Flush tanks shall be provided with overflows discharging to the water closet or urinal connected thereto and shall be sized to prevent flooding the tank at the maximum rate at which the tanks are supplied with water according to the manufacturer’s design conditions. The opening of the overflow pipe shall be located above the flood level rim of the water closet or urinal or above a secondary overflow in the flush tank.

**425.3.3 Sheet copper.** Sheet copper utilized for flush tank linings shall conform to ASTM B152 and shall not weigh less than 10 ounces per square foot (0.03 kg/m²).

**425.3.4 Access required.** All parts in a flush tank shall be accessible for repair and replacement.

**425.4 Flush pipes and fittings.** Flush pipes and fittings shall be of nonferrous material and shall conform to ASME A112.19.5/CSA B45.15.

**SECTION 426 MANUAL FOOD AND BEVERAGE DISPENSING EQUIPMENT**

**426.1 Approval.** Manual food and beverage dispensing equipment shall conform to the requirements of NSF 18.

**SECTION 427 FLOOR SINKS**

**427.1 Approval.** Sanitary floor sinks shall conform to the requirements of ASME A112.6.7.
CHAPTER 5
WATER HEATERS

SECTION 501
GENERAL

501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design and installation of water heaters and the related safety devices and appurtenances.

501.2 Water heater as space heater. Where a combination potable water heating and space heating system requires water for space heating at temperatures greater than 140°F (60°C), a master thermostatic mixing valve complying with ASSE 1017 shall be provided to limit the water supplied to the potable hot water distribution system to a temperature of 140°F (60°C) or less. The potability of the water shall be maintained throughout the system.

501.3 Drain valves. Drain valves for emptying shall be installed at the bottom of each tank-type water heater and hot water storage tank. Drain valves shall conform to ASSE 1005.

501.4 Location. Water heaters and storage tanks shall be located and connected so as to provide access for observation, maintenance, servicing and replacement.

501.5 Water heater labeling. All water heaters shall be third-party certified.

501.6 Water temperature control in piping from tankless heaters. The temperature of water from tankless water heaters shall be not greater than 140°F (60°C) where intended for domestic uses. This provision shall not supersede the requirement for protective shower valves in accordance with Section 424.3.

501.7 Pressure marking of storage tanks. Storage tanks and water heaters installed for domestic hot water shall have the maximum allowable working pressure clearly and indelibly stamped in the metal or marked on a plate welded thereto or otherwise permanently attached. Such markings shall be in an accessible position outside of the tank so as to make inspection or reinspection readily possible.

501.8 Temperature controls. Hot water supply systems shall be equipped with automatic temperature controls capable of adjustments from the lowest to the highest acceptable temperature settings for the intended temperature operating range. In a water heating system where temperatures exceed 140°F (60°C), a means such as an approved mixing valve shall be installed to temper the water for domestic uses.

501.9 Safety features of hot water heaters. The following is a reprint of N.C.G.S. 66-27.1, “Certain automatic hot water tanks or heaters to have approved relief valves; installation or sale of unapproved relief valves forbidden.”

   a) No individual, firm, corporation or business shall install, sell or offer for sale any automatic hot water tank or heater of 120-gallon (454 L) capacity or less, except for a tankless water heater, which does not have installed thereon by the manufacturer of the tank or heater an American Society of Mechanical Engineers and National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors approved type pressure-temperature relief valve set at or below the safe working pressure of the tank as indicated, and so labeled by the manufacturer’s identification stamped or cast upon the tank or heater or upon a plate secured to it.

   b) No individual, firm, corporation or business shall install, sell or offer for sale any relief valve, whether it be pressure type, temperature type or pressure-temperature type, which does not carry the stamp of approval of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers and the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors.

The following is a reprint of N.C.G.S. 66-27.1A, “Water heater thermostat settings.”

   a) The thermostat of any new residential water heater offered for sale or lease for use in a single-family or multifamily dwelling in the State shall be preset by the manufacturer or installer no higher than approximately 120°F (49°C). A water heater reservoir temperature may be set higher if it is supplying space heaters that require higher temperatures. For purposes of this section, a water heater shall mean the primary source of hot water for any single-family or multifamily residential dwelling including, but not limited to any solar or other hot water heating systems.

   b) Nothing in this section shall prohibit the occupant of a single-family or multifamily dwelling with an individual water heater from resetting or having reset the thermostat on the water heater. Any such resetting shall relieve the manufacturer or installer of the water heater and, in the case of a residential dwelling that is leased or rented, also the unit’s owner, from liability for damages attributed to the resetting.

   c) A warning tag or sticker shall be placed on or near the operating thermostat control of any residential water heater. This tag or sticker shall state that the thermostat settings above the preset temperature may cause severe burns. This tag or sticker may carry such other appropriate warnings as may be agreed upon by manufacturers, installers and other interested parties.

501.10 Fossil fuel equipment installation. The installation of the following equipment and systems shall comply with the North Carolina Fuel Gas Code:

1. Fuel piping for any fossil fuel-burning equipment.
2. Venting systems for fossil fuel-burning equipment which is part of the plumbing system.
SECTION 502
INSTALLATION

502.1 General. Water heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Oil-fired water heaters shall conform to the requirements of this code and the International Mechanical Code. Electric water heaters shall conform to the requirements of this code and provisions of NFPA 70. Gas-fired water heaters shall conform to the requirements of the International Fuel Gas Code.

502.1.1 Elevation and protection. Elevation of water heater ignition sources and mechanical damage protection requirements for water heaters shall be in accordance with the International Mechanical Code and the International Fuel Gas Code.

502.2 Rooms used as a plenum. Water heaters using solid, liquid or gas fuel shall not be installed in a room containing air-handling machinery where such room is used as a plenum.

502.3 Water heaters installed in attics. Attics containing a water heater shall be provided with an opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the water heater. The passageway shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in height and 22 inches (559 mm) in width and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length when measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the water heater. If 6 feet (1829 mm) of headroom is provided along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the water heater, the length of the passageway is permitted to exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) in length. The passageway shall have continuous solid flooring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in width. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in length and 30 inches (762 mm) in width shall be present at the front or service side of the water heater. The clear access opening dimensions shall be not less than 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm) where such dimensions are large enough to allow removal of the water heater.

502.4 Seismic supports. Where earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with the International Building Code, water heater supports shall be designed and installed for the seismic forces in accordance with the International Building Code.

502.5 Clearances for maintenance and replacement. Deleted.

502.6 Installation in crawl spaces. Under-floor spaces containing appliances requiring access shall be provided with an access opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to remove the largest component of the appliance. The passageway shall not be less than 22 inches (559 mm) high and 36 inches (914 mm) wide, nor more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length when measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the equipment. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the appliance. If the depth of the passageway or the service space exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below the adjoining grade, the walls of the passageway shall be lined with concrete or masonry extending 4 inches (102 mm) above the adjoining grade and having sufficient lateral-bearing capacity to resist collapse. The clear access opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm), where such dimensions are large enough to allow removal of the largest component of the appliance.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway is not required where the level service space is present when the access is open and the appliance is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.

2. Where the passageway is not less than 6 feet high (1829 mm) for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

502.7 Under-floor and exterior-grade installation.

502.7.1 Exterior-grade installations. Equipment and appliances installed above grade level shall be supported on a solid base or approved material a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) thick.

502.7.2 Under-floor installation. Suspended equipment shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) above the adjoining grade.

502.7.3 Crawl space supports. The support shall be a minimum of a 2-inch (51 mm) thick solid base, 2-inch (51 mm) thick formed concrete, or stacked masonry units held in place by mortar of other approved method. The water heater shall be supported not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above grade.

502.7.4 Drainage. Below-grade installations shall be provided with a natural drain or an automatic lift or sump pump. Existing installation that can be terminated outdoors must terminate outdoors. Where the installation is such that outdoor termination is impossible, indoor termination is allowable.

502.8 Prohibited installations. Water heaters, (using solid, liquid or gas fuel) with the exception of those having direct vent systems, shall not be installed in bathrooms and bedrooms or in a closet with access only through a bedroom or bathroom. However, water heaters of the automatic storage type may be installed as replacement in a bathroom, when approved by the plumbing official, provided they are vented and supplied with adequate combustion air.

Exception: When a closet, having a weather-stripped solid door with an approved closing device, has been designed exclusively for the water heater and where all air for combustion and ventilation is supplied from outdoors.

SECTION 503
CONNECTIONS

503.1 Cold water line valve. The cold water branch line from the main water supply line to each hot water storage tank or water heater shall be provided with a valve, located within 3 feet the equipment and serving only the hot water storage tank or water heater. The valve shall not interfere or cause a disruption of the cold water supply to the remainder of the cold water system. The valve shall be provided with access on the same floor level as the water heater served.
503.2 Water circulation. The method of connecting a circulating water heater to the tank shall provide circulation of water through the water heater. The pipe or tubes required for the installation of appliances that will draw from the water heater or storage tank shall comply with the provisions of this code for material and installation. Installation shall comply with the manufacturer’s instructions and the requirements of the North Carolina Energy Conservation Code.

SECTION 504 SAFETY DEVICES

504.1 Antisiphon devices. An approved means, such as a cold water “dip” tube with a hole at the top or a vacuum relief valve installed in the cold water supply line above the top of the heater or tank, shall be provided to prevent siphoning of any storage water heater or tank.

504.2 Vacuum relief valve. Bottom fed water heaters and bottom fed tanks connected to water heaters shall have a vacuum relief valve installed. The vacuum relief valve shall comply with ANSI Z21.22.

504.3 Shutdown. A means for disconnecting an electric hot water supply system from its energy supply shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 70. A separate valve shall be provided to shut off the energy fuel supply to all other types of hot water supply systems.

504.4 Relief valve. Storage water heaters operating above atmospheric pressure shall be provided with an approved, self-closing (levered) pressure relief valve and temperature relief valve or combination thereof. The relief valve shall conform to ANSI Z21.22. The relief valve shall not be used as a means of controlling thermal expansion.

504.4.1 Installation. Such valves shall be installed in the shell of the water heater tank. Temperature relief valves shall be so located in the tank as to be actuated by the water in the top 6 inches (152 mm) of the tank served. For installations with separate storage tanks, the approved, self-closing (levered) pressure relief valve and temperature relief valve or combination thereof conforming to ANSI Z21.22 valves shall be installed on both the storage water heater and storage tank. There shall not be a check valve or shutoff valve between a relief valve and the heater or tank served.

504.5 Relief valve approval. Temperature and pressure relief valves, or combinations thereof, and energy cutoff devices shall bear the label of an approved agency and shall have a temperature setting of not more than 210°F (99°C) and a pressure setting not exceeding the tank or water heater manufacturer’s rated working pressure or 150 psi (1035 kPa), whichever is less. The relieving capacity of each pressure relief valve and each temperature relief valve shall equal or exceed the heat input to the water heater or storage tank.

504.6 Requirements for discharge piping. The discharge piping serving a pressure relief valve, temperature relief valve or combination thereof shall:

1. Not be directly connected to the drainage system.
2. Discharge in the same room as the water heater either on the floor, into an indirect waste receptor or into a water heater pan.

2.1 Discharge through an air gap or air gap fitting to a remote termination point that is observable by the building occupants.
3. Not be smaller than the diameter of the outlet of the valve served and shall discharge full size to the air gap.
4. Serve a single relief device and shall not connect to piping serving any other relief device or equipment.
5. Discharge to the floor, to the pan serving the water heater or storage tank, to a waste receptor or to the outdoors.
6. Discharge in a manner that does not cause personal injury or structural damage.
7. Deleted.
8. Not be trapped.
9. Be installed so as to flow by gravity.
10. Terminate not more than 6 inches (152 mm) above and not less than two times the discharge pipe diameter above the floor or flood level rim of the waste receptor.
11. Not have a threaded connection at the end of such piping.
12. Not have valves or tee fittings.
13. Be constructed of those materials listed in Section 605.4 or materials tested, rated and approved for such use in accordance with ASME A112.4.1.
14. The discharge pipe shall be clamped or otherwise supported in accordance with Table 308.5 with not less than one clamp or support within 12 inches (305 mm) of the point of discharge.

504.7 Required pan. Where a storage tank-type water heater or a hot water storage tank is installed in: (a) remote locations such as a suspended ceiling, (b) attics, (c) above occupied spaces, (d) unventilated crawl spaces, or (e) a location where water leakage from the tank will cause damage to primary structural members, the tank or water heater shall be installed in a galvanized steel or aluminum pan having a material thickness of not less than 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 gage for steel or No. 26 gage for aluminum), or other pans approved for such use.

Exceptions:

1. Electric water heaters may rest in a high-impact plastic pan of at least 4/8 inch (1.6 mm) thickness.
2. Water heater mounted on concrete floor with a floor drain.

504.7.1 Pan size and drain. The pan shall be not less than 1 inch (38 mm) in depth and shall be of sufficient size and shape to receive all dripping or condensate from the tank or water heater. The pan drain shall not be obstructed by the appliance. The pan shall be drained by an indirect waste pipe having a diameter of not less than 1 inch (25.4
mm). Piping for safety pan drains shall be of those materials listed in Table 605.4. Where a pan drain was not previously installed, a pan drain shall not be required for a replacement water heater installation.

504.7.2 Pan drain termination. The pan drain shall extend full size and terminate over a suitably located indirect waste receptor or floor drain or extend to the exterior of the building and terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) and not more than 24 inches (610 mm) above the adjacent ground surface. Where a pan drain was not previously installed, a pan drain shall not be required for a replacement water heater installation.

SECTION 505
INSULATION

[E] 505.1 Unfired vessel insulation. Unfired hot water storage tanks shall be insulated to R-12.5 (h · ft² · °F)/Btu (R-2.2 m² · K/W).
CHAPTER 6
WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

SECTION 601
GENERAL

601.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the materials, design and installation of water supply systems, both hot and cold, for utilization in connection with human occupancy and habitation and shall govern the installation of individual water supply systems.

601.2 Solar energy utilization. Solar energy systems used for heating potable water or using an independent medium for heating potable water shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code. The use of solar energy shall not compromise the requirements for cross connection or protection of the potable water supply system required by this code.

601.3 Existing piping used for grounding. Existing metallic water service piping used for electrical grounding shall not be replaced with nonmetallic pipe or tubing until other approved means of grounding is provided.

601.4 Tests. The potable water distribution system shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.5.

601.5 Rehabilitation of piping systems. Where pressure piping systems are rehabilitated using an epoxy lining system, such lining system shall comply with ASTM F2831.

SECTION 602
WATER REQUIRED

602.1 General. Structures equipped with plumbing fixtures and utilized for human occupancy or habitation shall be provided with a potable supply of water in the amounts and at the pressures specified in this chapter.

602.2 Potable water required. Only potable water shall be supplied to plumbing fixtures that provide water for drinking, bathing or culinary purposes, or for the processing of food, medical or pharmaceutical products. Unless otherwise provided in this code, potable water shall be supplied to all plumbing fixtures.

602.3 Individual water supply. Where a potable public water supply is not available, individual sources of potable water supply shall be utilized.

SECTION 603
WATER SERVICE

603.1 Size of water service pipe. The water service pipe shall be sized to supply water to the structure in the quantities and at the pressures required in this code. The water service pipe shall be not less than 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) in diameter.

603.2 Separation of water service and building sewer.

1. Where water service piping is located in the same trench with the building sewer, such sewer shall be constructed of materials listed in Table 702.2.

2. Where the building sewer piping is not constructed of materials listed in Table 702.2, the water service pipe and the building sewer shall be horizontally separated by not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) of undisturbed or compacted earth.

3. The required separation distance shall not apply where a water service pipe crosses a sewer pipe, provided the water service is sleeved to a point not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the sewer pipe centerline on both sides of such crossing. The sleeve shall be of pipe materials listed in Table 605.3, 702.2 or 702.3.

4. The required separation distance shall not apply where the bottom of the water service pipe, located within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the sewer, is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the highest point of the top of the building sewer.

603.2.1 Water service near sources of pollution. Potable water service pipes shall not be located in, under or above cesspools, septic tanks, septic tank drainage fields or seepage pits (see Section 605.1 for soil and ground water conditions).

SECTION 604
DESIGN OF BUILDING WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

604.1 General. The design of the water distribution system shall conform to accepted engineering practice. Methods utilized to determine pipe sizes shall be approved.

604.2 System interconnection. At the points of interconnection between the hot and cold water supply piping systems and the individual fixtures, appliances or devices, provisions shall be made to prevent undesired flow between such piping systems.

604.3 Water distribution system design criteria. The water distribution system shall be designed, and pipe sizes shall be selected such that under conditions of peak demand, the capacities at the fixture supply pipe outlets shall be not less than shown in Table 604.3. The minimum flow rate and flow pressure provided to fixtures and appliances not listed in Table 604.3 shall be in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions.
TABLE 604.3
WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM DESIGN CRITERIA REQUIRED CAPACITY AT Fixture SUPPLY PIPE OUTLETS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fixture Supply Outlet Serving</th>
<th>Flow Rate(^a) (gpm)</th>
<th>Flow Pressure (psi)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bathtub, balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination balanced-pressure/thermostatic mixing valve</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bidet, thermostatic mixing valve</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination fixture</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dishwasher, residential</td>
<td>2.75</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking fountain</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laundry tray</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavatory, private</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavatory, private, mixing valve</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavatory, public</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shower</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shower, balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination balanced-pressure/thermostatic mixing valve</td>
<td>2.5(^b)</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sillcock, hose bibb</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sink, residential</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sink, service</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinal, valve</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, blow out, flushometer valve</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, flushometer tank</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, siphonic, flushometer valve</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, tank, close coupled</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, tank, one piece</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.
\(a\) For additional requirements for flow rates and quantities, see Section 604.4.
\(b\) Where the shower mixing valve manufacturer indicates a lower flow rating for the mixing valve, the lower value shall be applied.

604.4 Maximum flow and water consumption. The maximum water consumption flow rates and quantities for all plumbing fixtures and fixture fittings shall be in accordance with Table 604.4.

Exceptions:
1. Blowout design water closets having a water consumption not greater than 3 1/2 gallons (13 L) per flushing cycle.
2. Vegetable sprays.
3. Clinical sinks having a water consumption not greater than 4 1/2 gallons (17 L) per flushing cycle.
4. Service sinks.
5. Emergency showers.

604.4.1 Lavatory faucets. Lavatory faucets shall be of the metering type when located in the following public restrooms:
1. In all occupancies in restrooms that have six or more lavatories.
2. In school occupancies in student-use restrooms.

3. In assembly occupancies in all customer or public-use restrooms.

TABLE 604.4
MAXIMUM FLOW RATES AND CONSUMPTION FOR PLUMBING FIXTURES AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plumbing Fixture or Fixture Fitting</th>
<th>Maximum Flow Rate or Quantity(^a)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lavatory, private</td>
<td>2.2 gpm at 60 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavatory, public (metering)</td>
<td>0.25 gallon per metering cycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavatory, public (other than metering)</td>
<td>0.5 gpm at 60 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shower head(^a)</td>
<td>2.5 gpm at 80 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sink faucet</td>
<td>2.2 gpm at 60 psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinal</td>
<td>1.0 gallon per flushing cycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet</td>
<td>1.6 gallons per flushing cycle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.
\(a\) A hand-held shower spray is a shower head.
\(b\) Consumption tolerances shall be determined from referenced standards.

604.5 Size of fixture supply. The minimum size of a fixture supply pipe shall be as shown in Table 604.5. The fixture supply pipe shall terminate not more than 36 inches (762 mm) from the point of connection to the fixture. A reduced-size flexible water connector installed between the supply pipe and the fixture shall be of an approved type. The supply pipe shall extend to the floor or wall adjacent to the fixture. The minimum size of individual distribution lines utilized in gridded or parallel water distribution systems shall be as shown in Table 604.5.

Exception: The length of restriction shall not apply to residential dishwashers or ice makers.

TABLE 604.5
MINIMUM SIZES OF FIXTURE WATER SUPPLY PIPES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fixture</th>
<th>Minimum Pipe Size (inch)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bathtubs(^a) (60” x 32” and smaller)</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathtubs(^a) (larger than 60” x 32”)</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bidet</td>
<td>3/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination sink and tray</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dishwasher, domestic(^a)</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking fountain</td>
<td>3/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hose bibbs</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitchen sink(^a)</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laundry, 1, 2 or 3 compartments(^a)</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavatory</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shower, single head(^a)</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinks, flushing rim</td>
<td>1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinks, service</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinal, flush tank</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinal, flushometer valve</td>
<td>1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall hydrant</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, flush tank</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, flushometer tank</td>
<td>1/4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
TABLE 604.5—continued
MINIMUM SIZES OF FIXTURE WATER SUPPLY PIPES

| Water closet, flushometer valve | 1 |
| Water closet, one piece* | 1/2 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

* Where the developed length of the distribution line is 60 feet or less, and the available pressure at the meter is 35 psi or greater, the minimum size of an individual distribution line supplied from a manifold and installed as part of a parallel water distribution system shall be one nominal tube size smaller than the sizes indicated.

604.6 Variable street pressures. Where street water main pressures fluctuate, the building water distribution system shall be designed for the minimum pressure available.

604.7 Inadequate water pressure. Wherever water pressure from the street main or other source of supply is insufficient to provide flow pressures at fixture outlets as required under Table 604.3, a water pressure booster system conforming to Section 606.5 shall be installed on the building water supply system.

604.8 Water pressure-reducing valve or regulator. Where water pressure within a building exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, an approved water-pressure-reducing valve conforming to ASSE 1003 or CSA B356 with strainer shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the building water distribution piping to not greater than 80 psi (552 kPa) static.

Exception: Service lines to sill cocks and outside hydrants, and main supply risers where pressure from the mains is reduced to 80 psi (552 kPa) or less at individual fixtures.

604.8.1 Valve design. The pressure-reducing valve shall be designed to remain open to permit uninterrupted water flow in case of valve failure.

604.8.2 Repair and removal. Water pressure-reducing valves, regulators and strainers shall be so constructed and installed as to permit repair or removal of parts without breaking a pipeline or removing the valve and strainer from the pipeline.

604.9 Water hammer. The flow velocity of the water distribution system shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer. A water-hammer arrestor shall be installed where quick-closing valves (for example: clothes washers, dishwashers, ice makers) and metallic piping are used. The water-hammer arrestor shall not be required on any valves where plastic pipe is used for water distribution piping. Water-hammer arrestors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Water-hammer arrestors shall conform to ASSE 1010.

604.10 Gridded and parallel water distribution system manifolds. Hot water and cold water manifolds installed with gridded or parallel connected individual distribution lines to each fixture or fixture fitting shall be designed in accordance with Sections 604.10.1 through 604.10.3.

604.10.1 Manifold sizing. Hot water and cold water manifolds shall be sized in accordance with Table 604.10.1. The total gallons per minute is the demand of all outlets supplied.

604.10.2 Valves. Individual fixture shutoff valves installed at the manifold shall be identified as to the fixture being supplied.

604.10.3 Access. Access shall be provided to manifolds.

604.11 Individual pressure balancing in-line valves for individual fixture fittings. Where individual pressure balancing in-line valves for individual fixture fittings are installed, such valves shall comply with ASSE 1066. Such valves shall be installed in an accessible location and shall not be utilized alone as a substitute for the balanced pressure, thermostatic or combination shower valves required in Section 424.3.

604.10.4 Gridded and parallel water distribution system manifolds. Hot water and cold water manifolds installed with gridded or parallel connected individual distribution lines to each fixture or fixture fitting shall be designed in accordance with Sections 604.10.1 through 604.10.3.

604.10.5 Manifold sizing. Hot water and cold water manifolds shall be sized in accordance with Table 604.10.1. The total gallons per minute is the demand of all outlets supplied.

604.10.6 Valves. Individual fixture shutoff valves installed at the manifold shall be identified as to the fixture being supplied.

605.1 Soil and ground water. The installation of a water service or water distribution pipe shall be prohibited in soil and ground water contaminated with solvents, fuels, organic compounds or other detrimental materials causing permeation, corrosion, degradation or structural failure of the piping material. Where detrimental conditions are suspected, a chemical analysis of the soil and ground water conditions shall be required to ascertain the acceptability of the water service or water distribution piping material for the specific installation. Where detrimental conditions exist, approved alternative materials or routing shall be required.

605.2 Lead content of water supply pipe and fittings. Pipe and pipe fittings, including valves and faucets, utilized in the water supply system shall have not more than 8-percent lead content.

605.2.1 Lead content of drinking water pipe and fittings. Pipe, pipe fittings, joints, valves, faucets and fixture fittings utilized to supply water for drinking or cooking purposes shall comply with NSF 372 and shall have a weighted average lead content of 0.25 percent or less.

605.3 Water service pipe. Water service pipe shall conform to NSF 61 and shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 605.3. Water service pipe or tubing, installed underground and outside of the structure, shall have a working pressure rating of not less than 160 psi (1100 kPa) at 73.4°F (23°C). Where the water pressure exceeds 160 psi (1100 kPa), piping...
material shall have a working pressure rating not less than the highest available pressure. Water service piping materials not third-party certified for water distribution shall terminate 5 feet (1.524 m) outside of the building. Ductile iron water service piping shall be cement mortar lined in accordance with AWWA C104.

605.3.1 Dual check-valve-type backflow preventer. Dual check-valve backflow preventers installed on the water supply system shall comply with ASSE 1024 or CSA B64.6.

605.4 Water distribution pipe. Water distribution pipe shall conform to NSF 61 and shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 605.4. Hot water distribution pipe and tubing shall have a pressure rating of not less than 100 psi (690 kPa) at 180°F (82°C). Cold water distribution pipe and tubing shall have a minimum pressure rating of 160 psi (1100 kPa) at 73.4°F (23°C).

605.5 Fittings. Pipe fittings shall be approved for installation with the piping material installed and shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Table 605.5. Pipe fittings utilized in water supply systems shall also comply with NSF 61. The fittings shall not have ledges, shoulders or reductions capable of retarding or obstructing flow in the piping. Ductile and gray iron pipe and pipe fittings utilized in water service piping systems shall be cement mortar lined in accordance with AWWA C104.

605.5.1 Mechanically formed tee fittings. Mechanically extracted outlets shall have a height not less than three times the thickness of the branch tube wall.

605.5.1.1 Full flow assurance. Branch tubes shall not restrict the flow in the run tube. A dimple serving as a depth stop shall be formed in the branch tube to ensure that penetration into the collar is of the correct depth. For inspection purposes, a second dimple shall be placed 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) above the first dimple. Dimples shall be aligned with the tube run.

605.5.1.2 Brazed joints. Mechanically formed tee fittings shall be brazed in accordance with Section 605.14.1.

605.6 Flexible water connectors. Flexible water connectors exposed to continuous pressure shall conform to ASME A112.18.6/CSA B125.6. Access shall be provided to all flexible water connectors.

605.7 Valves. Valves shall be compatible with the type of piping material installed in the system. Valves shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 605.7 or shall be approved. Valves intended to supply drinking water shall meet the requirements of NSF 61.

### Table 605.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe</td>
<td>ASTM D1527; ASTM D2282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brass pipe</td>
<td>ASTM B43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe</td>
<td>ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; CSA B137.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride/aluminum/chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC/AL/CPVC)</td>
<td>ASTM F2855</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper or copper-alloy pipe</td>
<td>ASTM B42; ASTM B302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, WK, L, WL, M or WM)</td>
<td>ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B251; ASTM B447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic pipe and tubing</td>
<td>ASTM F876; ASTM F877; AWWA C904; CSA B137.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-ALPEX) pipe</td>
<td>ASTM F1281; ASTM F2262; CSA B137.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/high-density polyethylene (PEX-HDPE)</td>
<td>ASTM F1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ductile iron water pipe</td>
<td>AWWA C151/A21.51; AWWA C115/A21.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galvanized steel pipe</td>
<td>ASTM A53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe</td>
<td>ASTM D2239; ASTM D3035; AWWA C901; CSA B137.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyethylene (PE) plastic tubing</td>
<td>ASTM D2737; AWWA C901; CSA B137.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyethylene/aluminum/PE (PE-AL-PE) pipe</td>
<td>ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) plastic tubing</td>
<td>ASTM F2769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe or tubing</td>
<td>ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polystyrene chloride (PVC) plastic pipe</td>
<td>ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241; ASTM D2672; CSA B137.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel pipe (Type 304/304L)</td>
<td>ASTM A312; ASTM A778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel pipe (Type 316/316L)</td>
<td>ASTM A312; ASTM A778</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Below grade Type K, WK, L, WL.
### TABLE 605.4
**WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brass pipe</td>
<td>ASTM B43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe and tubing</td>
<td>ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; CSA B137.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride/aluminum/chlorinated polyvinyl</td>
<td>ASTM F2855</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper or copper-alloy pipe</td>
<td>ASTM B42; ASTM B302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, WK, L, WL, M or WM)²</td>
<td>ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B251; ASTM B447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing</td>
<td>ASTM F876; ASTM F877; CSA B137.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene</td>
<td>ASTM F1281; ASTM F2262; CSA B137.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/high-density polyethylene</td>
<td>ASTM F1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ductile iron pipe</td>
<td>AWWA C151/A21.51; AWWA C115/A21.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galvanized steel pipe</td>
<td>ASTM A53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) composite pipe</td>
<td>ASTM F1282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) plastic tubing</td>
<td>ASTM F2769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe or tubing</td>
<td>ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel pipe (Type 304/304L)</td>
<td>ASTM A312; ASTM A778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel pipe (Type 316/316L)</td>
<td>ASTM A312; ASTM A778</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Below grade Type K, WK, L, WL.
### TABLE 605.5
**PIPE FITTINGS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic</td>
<td>ASTM D2468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast iron</td>
<td>ASME B16.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic</td>
<td>ASSE 1061; ASTM D2846; ASTM F437; ASTM F438; ASTM F439; CSA B137.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper or copper alloy</td>
<td>ASME B16.1.5; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.26; ASME B16.51; ASME 1061; ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross-linked polyethylene/high-density polyethylene (PEX-AL-HDPE)</td>
<td>ASTM F1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fittings for cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing</td>
<td>ASSE 1061, ASTM F877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F1960; ASTM F2080; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2434; ASTM F2735; CSA B137.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fittings for polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) plastic tubing</td>
<td>ASTM F1807; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2735; ASTM F2769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray iron and ductile iron</td>
<td>ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548; AWWA C110/A21.10; AWWA C153/A21.53;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insert fittings for polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) and cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PE)</td>
<td>ASTM F1974; ASTM F1281; ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9; CSA B137.10M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malleable iron</td>
<td>ASME B16.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal (brass) insert fittings for polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) and cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PE)</td>
<td>ASTM F1974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polybutylene (PB) plastic</td>
<td>ASSE 1061; CSA B137.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe</td>
<td>ASTM D2609; ASTM D2683; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1055; CSA B137.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe or tubing</td>
<td>ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic</td>
<td>ASTM D2464; ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; CSA B137.2; CSA B137.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel (Type 304/304L)</td>
<td>ASTM A312; ASTM A778; ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel (Type 316/316L)</td>
<td>ASTM A312; ASTM A778; ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel</td>
<td>ASME B16.9; ASME B16.11; ASME B16.28; ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 605.7
**VALVES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic</td>
<td>ASME A112.4.14; ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1; ASTM F1970; CSA B125.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper or copper alloy</td>
<td>ASME A112.4.14; ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1; ASME B16.34; CSA B125.3; MSS SP-67; MSS SP-80; MSS SP-110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic</td>
<td>ASME A112.4.14; ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1; CSA B125.3; NSF 359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray iron and ductile iron</td>
<td>AWWA C500; AWWA C504; AWWA C507; MSS SP-67; MSS SP-70; MSS SP-71; MSS SP-72; MSS SP-78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polypropylene (PP) plastic</td>
<td>ASME A112.4.14; ASTM F2389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic</td>
<td>ASME A112.4.14; ASTM F1970</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
605.8 Manufactured pipe nipples. Manufactured pipe nipples shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 605.8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brass-, copper-, chromium-plated</td>
<td>ASTM B687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel</td>
<td>ASTM A733</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

605.9 Prohibited joints and connections. The following types of joints and connections shall be prohibited:

1. Cement or concrete joints.
2. Joints made with fittings not approved for the specific installation.
3. Solvent-cement joints between different types of plastic pipe.
4. Saddle-type fittings.

605.10 ABS plastic. Joints between ABS plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.10.1 through 605.10.3.

605.10.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints on water pipes shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM D3139. Mechanical joints shall only be installed in underground systems, unless otherwise approved. Joints shall be installed only in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.10.2 Solvent cementing. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Solvent cement that conforms to ASTM D2235 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2235. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

605.10.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASTM B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. Approved thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

605.11 Brass. Joints between brass pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.11.1 through 605.11.4.

605.11.1 Brazed joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An approved flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

605.11.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.11.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASTM B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

605.11.4 Welded joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded with an approved filler metal.

605.12 Gray iron and ductile iron joints. Joints for gray and ductile iron pipe and fittings shall comply with AWWA C111/A21.11 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.13 Copper pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.13.1 through 605.13.5.

605.13.1 Brazed joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An approved flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

605.13.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.13.3 Solder joints. Solder joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM B828. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32. The joining of water supply piping shall be made with lead-free solder and fluxes. “Lead free” shall mean a chemical composition equal to or less than 0.2-percent lead.

605.13.4 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASTM B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

605.13.5 Welded joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded with an approved filler metal.

605.14 Copper tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.14.1 through 605.14.5.

605.14.1 Brazed joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An approved flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

605.14.2 Flared joints. Flared joints for water pipe shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

605.14.3 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints. Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall comply with ASTM F1476, shall be made with an approved elastomeric seal and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Such joints shall be exposed or concealed.

605.14.4 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.14.5 Press-connect joints. Press-connect joints shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 605.5, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The tube shall be fully inserted into the press-connect fitting. Press-connect joints shall be pressed with a tool certified by the manufacturer.

605.14.6 Solder joints. Solder joints shall be made in accordance with the methods of ASTM B828. All cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32. The join-
ing of water supply piping shall be made with lead-free solders and fluxes. “Lead free” shall mean a chemical composition equal to or less than 0.2-percent lead.

605.15 CPVC plastic. Joints between CPVC plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.15.1 through 605.15.3.

605.15.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.15.2 Solvent cementing. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture, and an approved primer shall be applied. Solvent cement, orange in color and conforming to ASTM F493, shall be applied to joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet, and in accordance with ASTM D2846 or ASTM F493. Solvent cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

Exception: A primer is not required where all of the following conditions apply:

1. The solvent cement used is third-party certified as conforming to ASTM F493.
2. The solvent cement used is yellow or red in color.
3. The solvent cement is used only for joining 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) through 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) CPVC/AL/CPVC pipe and CPVC fittings.
4. The CPVC systems are installed in accordance with ASTM D2846.

605.15.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe, but the pressure rating of the pipe shall be reduced by 50 percent. Thread by socket molded fittings shall be permitted. Approved thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

605.16 Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride/aluminum/chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC/AL/CPVC) pipe and tubing. Joints between CPVC/AL/CPVC plastic pipe or CPVC fittings shall comply with Sections 605.16.1 and 605.16.2.

605.16.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.16.2 Solvent cementing. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture, and an approved primer shall be applied. Solvent cement, orange in color and conforming to ASTM F493, shall be applied to joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet, and in accordance with ASTM D2846 or ASTM F493. Solvent cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

Exception: A primer is not required where all of the following conditions apply:

1. The solvent cement used is third-party certified as conforming to ASTM F493.
2. The solvent cement used is yellow in color.
3. The solvent cement is used only for joining 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) through 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) CPVC/AL/CPVC pipe and CPVC fittings.
4. The CPVC fittings are manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2846.

605.17 PEX plastic. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.17.1 and 605.17.2.

605.17.1 Flared joints. Flared pipe ends shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

605.17.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Fittings for cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Table 605.5 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. PEX tubing shall be factory marked with the appropriate standards for the fittings that the PEX manufacturer specifies for use with the tubing.

605.18 Steel. Joints between galvanized steel pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.18.1 through 605.18.3.

605.18.1 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

605.18.2 Mechanical joints. Joints shall be made with an approved elastomeric seal. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.18.3 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints. Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall comply with ASTM F1476, shall be made with an approved elastomeric seal and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Such joints shall be exposed or concealed.

605.19 PE plastic. Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe or tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.19.1 through 605.19.4.

605.19.1 Flared joints. Flared joints shall be permitted where so indicated by the pipe manufacturer. Flared joints shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

605.19.2 Heat-fusion joints. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. All joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperature and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2657.

605.19.3 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.19.4 Installation. Polyethylene pipe shall be cut square, with a cutter designed for plastic pipe. Except where joined by heat fusion, pipe ends shall be chamfered to remove sharp edges. Kinked pipe shall not be installed. The minimum pipe bending radius shall be not less than 30 pipe diameters, or the minimum coil radius, whichever is greater. Piping shall not be bent beyond straightening of the curvature of the coil. Bends shall be prohibited within 10 pipe diameters of any fitting or valve. Stiffener inserts installed with compression-type couplings and fittings shall
not extend beyond the clamp or nut of the coupling or fitting.

605.20 Polypropylene (PP) plastic. Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Section 605.20.1 or 605.20.2.

605.20.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, butt-fusion polypropylene fittings or electrofusion polypropylene fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

605.20.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.21 Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) and cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PE). Joints between PE-AL-PE or PEX-AL-PE pipe and fittings shall comply with Section 605.21.1.

605.21.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Fittings for PE-AL-PE and PEX-AL-PE as described in ASTM F1974, ASTM F1281, ASTM F1282, CSA B137.9 and CSA B137.10 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.22 PVC plastic. Joints between PVC plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.22.1 through 605.22.3.

605.22.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints on water pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM D3139. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems unless otherwise approved. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.22.2 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints. Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall comply with ASTM F1476, shall be made with an approved elastomeric seal and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Such joints shall be exposed or concealed.

605.22.3 Solvent cementing. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. A purple primer or an ultraviolet purple primer that conforms to ASTM F656 shall be applied. When an ultraviolet primer is used, the installer shall provide an ultraviolet light to the inspector to be used during the inspection. Solvent cement not purple in color and conforming to ASTM D2564 or CSA B137.3 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet and shall be in accordance with ASTM D2855. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

605.22.4 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe, but the pressure rating of the pipe shall be reduced by 50 percent. Thread by socket molded fittings shall be permitted. Approved thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

605.23 Stainless steel. Joints between stainless steel pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.23.1 and 605.23.3.

605.23.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.23.2 Welded joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded autogenously or with an approved filler metal as referenced in ASTM A312.

605.23.3 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints. Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall comply with ASTM F1476, be made with an approved elastomeric seal and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Such joints shall be exposed or concealed.

605.24 Joints between different materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical-sealing type, or as permitted in Sections 605.24.1, 605.24.2 and 605.24.3. Connectors or adapters shall have an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM F477. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

605.24.1 Copper or copper-alloy tubing to galvanized steel pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing and galvanized steel pipe shall be made with a brass fitting or dielectric fitting or a dielectric union conforming to ASSE 1079. The copper tubing shall be soldered to the fitting in an approved manner, and the fitting shall be screwed to the threaded pipe.

605.24.2 Plastic pipe or tubing to other piping material. Joints between different types of plastic pipe or between plastic pipe and other piping material shall be made with approved adapters or transition fittings.

605.24.3 Stainless steel. Joints between stainless steel and different piping materials shall be made with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical-sealing type or a dielectric fitting or a dielectric union conforming to ASSE 1079.

605.25 PE-RT plastic. Joints between polyethylene of raised temperature plastic tubing and fittings shall be in accordance with Section 605.25.1.

605.25.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Fittings for polyethylene of raised temperature plastic tubing shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Table 605.5 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. Polyethylene of raised temperature plastic tubing shall be factory marked with the applicable standards for the fittings that the manufacturer of the tubing specifies for use with the tubing.

605.26 Polybutylene plastic. Joints between polybutylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings shall comply with Sections 605.26.1 through 605.26.3.

605.26.1 Flared joints. Flared pipe ends shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

605.26.2 Heat-fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion or butt-fusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. All joint surfaces shall be heated to the
melting temperature and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2657, ASTM D3309 or CAN3-B137.8M.

605.26.3 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

SECTION 606
INSTALLATION OF THE BUILDING
WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

606.1 Location of full-open valves. Full-open valves shall be installed in the following locations:

1. Deleted.

2. A full-open valve shall be located either outside the building within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the foundation wall in a readily accessible valve box, in the crawl space within 3 feet (914 mm) of the crawl space access door or within the building in a location where it may be accessed without the use of a ladder or a tool for each individual tenant space occupancy or address.

3. Deleted.

4. On the base of every water riser pipe in occupancies other than multiple-family residential occupancies that are two stories or less in height and in one- and two-family residential occupancies.

5. On the top of every water down-feed pipe in occupancies other than one- and two-family residential occupancies.

6. On the entrance to every water supply pipe to a dwelling unit, except where supplying a single fixture equipped with individual stops.

7. On the water supply pipe to a gravity or pressurized water tank.

8. On the water supply pipe to every water heater.

606.2 Location of shutoff valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed in the following locations:

1. On the fixture supply to each plumbing fixture other than bathtubs and showers in one- and two-family residential occupancies, and other than in individual sleeping units that are provided with unit shutoff valves in hotels, motels, boarding houses and similar occupancies.

2. On the water supply pipe for sillcocks.

3. On the water supply pipe to each appliance or mechanical equipment.

606.2.1 Buildings other than dwellings or dwelling units. Each supply branch line serving more than one fixture shall have a shutoff valve installed so as to isolate all fixtures and all pieces of equipment supplied by the branch line. The shutoff valve shall be labeled and located as close to the connection to the supply main and riser as practical.

606.3 Access to valves. Access shall be provided to all full-open valves and shutoff valves.

606.4 Valve identification. Service and hose bibb valves shall be identified. All other valves installed in locations that are not adjacent to the fixture or appliance shall be identified, indicating the fixture or appliance served.

606.5 Water pressure booster systems. Water pressure booster systems shall be provided as required by Sections 606.5.1 through 606.5.10.

606.5.1 Water pressure booster systems required. Where the water pressure in the public water main or individual water supply system is insufficient to supply the minimum pressures and quantities specified in this code, the supply shall be supplemented by an elevated water tank, a hydropneumatic pressure booster system or a water pressure booster pump installed in accordance with Section 606.5.5.

606.5.2 Support. All water supply tanks shall be supported in accordance with the International Building Code.

606.5.3 Covers. All water supply tanks shall be covered to keep out unauthorized persons, dirt and vermin. The covers of gravity tanks shall be vented with a return bend vent pipe with an area not less than the area of the down-feed riser pipe, and the vent shall be screened with a corrosion-resistant screen of not less than 16 by 20 mesh per inch (630 by 787 mesh per m).

606.5.4 Overflows for water supply tanks. A gravity or suction water supply tank shall be provided with an overflow with a diameter not less than that shown in Table 606.5.4. The overflow outlet shall discharge at a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof or roof drain; floor or floor drain; or over an open water-supplied fixture. The overflow outlet shall be covered with a corrosion-resistant screen of not less than 16 by 20 mesh per inch (630 by 787 mesh per m) and by 1/2-inch (6.4 mm) hardware cloth or shall terminate in a horizontal angle seat check valve. Drainage from overflow pipes shall be directed so as not to freeze on roof walks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAXIMUM CAPACITY OF WATER SUPPLY LINE TO TANK (gpm)</th>
<th>DIAMETER OF OVERFLOW PIPE (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 – 50</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 – 150</td>
<td>21/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151 – 200</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 – 400</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401 – 700</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>701 – 1,000</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 1,000</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

606.5.5 Low-pressure cutoff required on booster pumps. A low-pressure cutoff shall be installed on all booster pumps in a water pressure booster system to prevent creation of a vacuum or negative pressure on the suction side of the pump when a positive pressure of 10 psi (68.94 kPa) or less occurs on the suction side of the pump.
606.5.6 Potable water inlet control and location. Potable water inlets to gravity tanks shall be controlled by a fill valve or other automatic supply valve installed so as to prevent the tank from overflowing. The inlet shall be terminated so as to provide an air gap not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the overflow.

606.5.7 Tank drain pipes. A valved pipe shall be provided at the lowest point of each tank to permit emptying of the tank. The tank drain pipe shall discharge as required for overflow pipes and shall not be smaller in size than specified in Table 606.5.7.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TANK CAPACITY (gallons)</th>
<th>DRAIN PIPE (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 750</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>751 to 1,500</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,501 to 3,000</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,001 to 5,000</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,001 to 7,500</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 7,500</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

606.5.8 Prohibited location of potable supply tanks. Potable water gravity tanks or manholes of potable water pressure tanks shall not be located directly under any soil or waste piping or any source of contamination.

606.5.9 Pressure tanks, vacuum relief. All water pressure tanks shall be provided with a vacuum relief valve at the top of the tank that will operate up to a maximum water pressure of 200 psi (1380 kPa) and up to a maximum temperature of 200°F (93°C). The size of such vacuum relief valve shall be not less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).

**Exception:** This section shall not apply to pressurized captive air diaphragm/bladder tanks.

606.5.10 Pressure relief for tanks. Every pressure tank in a hydropneumatic pressure booster system shall be protected with a pressure relief valve. The pressure relief valve shall be set at a maximum pressure equal to the rating of the tank. The relief valve shall be installed on the supply pipe to the tank or on the tank. The relief valve shall discharge by gravity to a safe place of disposal.

606.6 Water supply system test. Upon completion of a section or the entire water supply system, the system, or portion completed, shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

606.7 Labeling of water distribution pipes in bundles. Where water distribution piping is bundled at installation, each pipe in the bundle shall be identified using stenciling or commercially available pipe labels. The identification shall indicate the pipe contents and the direction of flow in the pipe. The interval of the identification markings on the pipe shall not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm). There shall be less than one identification label on each pipe in each room, space or story.

**SECTION 607 HOT WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM**

607.1 Where required. In residential occupancies, hot water shall be supplied to plumbing fixtures and equipment utilized for bathing, washing, culinary purposes, cleansing, laundry or building maintenance. In nonresidential occupancies, hot water may be supplied for culinary purposes, cleansing, laundry or building maintenance purposes. In nonresidential occupancies, hot water or tempered water may be supplied for bathing and washing purposes.

607.1.1 Temperature limiting means. A thermostat control for a water heater shall not serve as the temperature limiting means for the purposes of complying with the requirements of this code for maximum allowable hot or tempered water delivery temperature at fixtures.

607.1.2 Tempered water temperature control. Tempered water shall be supplied through a water temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 and shall limit the tempered water to a maximum of 110°F (43°C). This provision shall not supersede the requirement for protective shower valves in accordance with Section 424.3.

607.2 Hot or tempered water supply to fixtures. The developed length of hot or tempered water piping, from the source of hot water to the fixtures that require hot or tempered water, shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm). Recirculating system piping and heat-traced piping shall be considered to be sources of hot or tempered water.

607.2.1 Circulation systems and heat trace systems for maintaining heated water temperature in distribution systems. For Group R2, R3 and R4 occupancies that are three stories or less in height above grade plane, the installation of heated water circulation and temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section R403.5.1 of the International Energy Conservation Code. For other than Group R2, R3 and R4 occupancies that are three stories or less in height above grade plane, the installation of heated water circulation and heat trace systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.6 of the International Energy Conservation Code.

607.2.1.1 Pump controls for hot water storage systems. The controls on pumps that circulate water between a water heater and a storage tank for heated water shall limit operation of the pump from heating cycle startup to not greater than 5 minutes after the end of the cycle.

607.2.1.2 Demand recirculation controls for distribution systems. A water distribution system having one or more recirculation pumps that pump water from a heated water supply pipe back to the heated water source through a cold water supply pipe shall be a demand recirculation water system. Pumps shall have controls that comply with both of the following:

1. The control shall start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fix-
ture, or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.

2. The control shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold water piping to 104°F (40°C).

607.2.2 Piping for recirculation systems having master thermostatic valves. Where a thermostatic mixing valve is used in a system with a hot water recirculating pump, the hot water or tempered water return line shall be routed to the cold water inlet pipe of the water heater and the cold water inlet pipe or the hot water return connection of the thermostatic mixing valve.

607.3 Thermal expansion control. Where a storage water heater is supplied with cold water that passes through a check valve, pressure reducing valve or backflow preventer, a thermal expansion tank shall be connected to the water heater cold water supply pipe at a point that is downstream of all check valves, pressure reducing valves and backflow preventers. Thermal expansion tanks shall be sized in accordance with the tank manufacturer’s instructions and shall be sized such that the pressure in the water distribution system shall not exceed that required by Section 604.8.

607.4 Flow of hot water to fixtures. Fixture fittings, faucets and diverters shall be installed and adjusted so that the flow of hot water from the fittings corresponds to the left-hand side of the fixture fitting.

Exception: Shower and tub/shower mixing valves conforming to ASSE 1016/ASME A112.1016/CSA B125.16 or ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1, where the flow of hot water corresponds to the markings on the device.

[E] 607.5 Insulation of piping. For other than Group R2, R3 and R4 occupancies that are three stories or less in height above grade plane, piping to the inlet of a water heater and piping conveying water heated by a water heater shall be insulated in accordance with Section C404.4 of the International Energy Conservation Code. For Group R2, R3 and R4 occupancies that are three stories or less in height above grade plane, piping to the inlet of a water heater and piping conveying water heated by a water heater shall be insulated in accordance with Section R403.5.3 of the International Energy Conservation Code.

SECTION 608
PROTECTION OF POTABLE WATER SUPPLY

608.1 General. A potable water supply system shall be designed, installed and maintained in such a manner so as to prevent contamination from nonpotable liquids, solids or gases being introduced into the potable water supply through cross connections or any other piping connections to the system. Backflow preventer applications shall conform to Section 608.1, except as specifically stated in Sections 608.2 through 608.16.10.

608.2 Plumbing fixtures. The supply lines and fittings for plumbing fixtures shall be installed so as to prevent backflow. Plumbing fixture fittings shall provide backflow protection in accordance with ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

608.3 Devices, appurtenances, appliances and apparatus. Devices, appurtenances, appliances and apparatus intended to serve some special function, such as sterilization, distillation, processing, cooling, or storage of ice or foods, and that connect to the water supply system, shall be provided with protection against backflow and contamination of the water supply system. Water pumps, filters, softeners, tanks and other appliances and devices that handle or treat potable water shall be protected against contamination.

608.3.1 Special equipment, water supply protection. The water supply for hospital fixtures shall be protected against backflow with a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly, an atmospheric or spill-resistant vacuum breaker assembly, or an air gap. Vacuum breakers for bedpan washer hoses shall not be located less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the floor. Vacuum breakers for hose connections in health care or laboratory areas shall not be less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

608.4 Water service piping. Water service piping shall be protected in accordance with Sections 603.2 and 603.2.1.

608.5 Chemicals and other substances. Chemicals and other substances that produce either toxic conditions, taste, odor or discoloration in a potable water system shall not be introduced into, or utilized in, such systems.

608.6 Cross connection control. Cross connections shall be prohibited, except where approved backflow prevention assemblies, backflow prevention devices or other means or methods are installed to protect the potable water supply.

608.6.1 Private water supplies. Cross connections between a private water supply and a potable public supply shall be prohibited.

608.7 Valves and outlets prohibited below grade. Potable water outlets and combination stop-and-waste valves shall not be installed underground or below grade. Freezeproof yard hydrants that drain the riser into the ground are considered to be stop-and-waste valves.

Exception: Freezeproof yard hydrants that drain the riser into the ground shall be permitted to be installed, provided that the potable water supply to such hydrants is protected upstream of the hydrants in accordance with Section 608 and the hydrants are permanently identified as nonpotable outlets by approved signage that reads as follows: “Caution, Nonpotable Water. Do Not Drink.”

608.8 Identification of nonpotable water systems. Where nonpotable water systems are installed, the piping conveying the nonpotable water shall be identified either by color marking, metal tags or tape in accordance with Sections 608.8.1 through 608.8.2.3.

608.8.1 Signage required. Nonpotable water outlets, such as hose connections, open ended pipes and faucets, shall be identified with signage that reads as follows: “Nonpotable water is utilized for [application name]. CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK.” The words shall be legibly and indelibly printed on a tag or sign constructed of corrosion-resistant waterproof material or shall be indelibly printed on the fixture.
## TABLE 608.1
### APPLICATION OF BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DEVICE</th>
<th>DEGREE OF HAZARD</th>
<th>APPLICATION</th>
<th>APPLICABLE STANDARDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Backflow prevention assemblies:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double check backflow prevention assembly and double check fire protection backflow prevention assembly</td>
<td>Low hazard</td>
<td>Backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes 1/8 − 1&quot;</td>
<td>ASSE 1015, AWWA C510, CSA B64.5, CSA B64.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double check detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies</td>
<td>Low hazard</td>
<td>Backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes 2&quot;−16&quot;</td>
<td>ASSE 1048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure vacuum breaker assembly</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Backsiphonage only Sizes 1/2&quot;−2&quot;</td>
<td>ASSE 1020, CSA B64.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly and reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow assembly</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes 1/8 &quot;− 1&quot;</td>
<td>ASSE 1013, AWWA C511, CSA B64.4, CSA B64.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced pressure detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Backsiphonage or backpressure (Fire sprinkler systems)</td>
<td>ASSE 1047</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spill-resistant vacuum breaker assembly</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Backsiphonage only Sizes 1/4&quot;−2&quot;</td>
<td>ASSE 1056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Backflow preventer plumbing devices:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antisiphon-type fill valves for gravity water closet flush tanks</td>
<td>High hazard</td>
<td>Backsiphonage only</td>
<td>ASSE 1002, CSA B125.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backflow preventer for carbonated beverage machines</td>
<td>Low hazard</td>
<td>Backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes 1/8 &quot;− 1/4&quot;</td>
<td>ASSE 1022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vents</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes 1/4&quot;−1&quot;</td>
<td>ASSE 1012, CSA B64.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual-check-valve-type backflow preventer</td>
<td>Low hazard</td>
<td>Backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes 1/4&quot;−1&quot;</td>
<td>ASSE 1024, CSA B64.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hose connection backflow preventer</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Low head backpressure, rated working pressure, backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes 1/2 &quot;− 1&quot;</td>
<td>ASME A112.21.3, ASSE 1052, CSA B64.2.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hose connection vacuum breaker</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Low head backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes 1/2&quot;, 3/4&quot;, 1&quot;</td>
<td>ASME A112.21.3, ASSE 1011, CSA B64.2, CSA B64.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory faucet backflow preventer</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Low head backpressure and backsiphonage</td>
<td>ASSE 1035, CSA B64.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipe-applied atmospheric-type vacuum breaker</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Backsiphonage only Sizes 1/4&quot;−4&quot;</td>
<td>ASSE 1001, CSA B64.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vacuum breaker wall hydrants, frost-resistant, automatic-draining-type</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Low head backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes 1/4&quot;, 1&quot;</td>
<td>ASME A112.21.3, ASSE 1019, CSA B64.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other means or methods:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air gap</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Backsiphonage or backpressure</td>
<td>ASME A112.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air gap fittings for use with plumbing fixtures, appliances and appurtenances</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Backsiphonage or backpressure</td>
<td>ASME A112.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barometric loop</td>
<td>High or low hazard</td>
<td>Backsiphonage only</td>
<td>(See Section 608.13.4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Low hazard—See Pollution (Section 202).
   High hazard—See Contamination (Section 202).

b. See Backpressure, low head (Section 202).
   See Backsiphonage (Section 202).
of the words shall be not less than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) in height and in colors in contrast to the background on which they are applied. In addition to the required wording, the pictograph shown in Figure 608.8.1 shall appear on the required signage.

608.8.2 Distribution pipe labeling and marking. Nonpotable distribution piping shall be purple in color and shall be embossed, or integrally stamped or marked, with the words; “CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK” or the piping shall be installed with a purple identification tape or wrap. Pipe identification shall include the contents of the piping system and an arrow indicating the direction of flow. Hazardous piping systems shall also contain information addressing the nature of the hazard. Pipe identification shall be repeated at intervals not exceeding 25 feet (7620 mm) and at each point where the piping passes through a wall, floor or roof. Lettering shall be readily observable within the room or space where the piping is located.

608.8.2.1 Color. The color of the pipe identification shall be discernable and consistent throughout the building. The color purple shall be used to identify reclaimed, rain and gray water distribution systems.

608.8.2.2 Lettering size. The size of the background color field and lettering shall comply with Table 608.8.2.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIPE DIAMETER (inches)</th>
<th>LENGTH BACKGROUND COLOR FIELD (inches)</th>
<th>SIZE OF LETTERS (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/4 to 1 1/4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2 to 2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2 to 6</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 to 10</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over 10</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

608.8.2.3 Identification tape. Where used, identification tape shall be at least 3 inches (76 mm) wide and have black or white lettering on a purple field stating “CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK.” Identification tape shall be installed on top of nonpotable rainwater distribution pipes, fastened at least every 10 feet (3048 mm) to each pipe length and run continuously the entire length of the pipe.

608.9 Reutilization prohibited. Water utilized for the cooling of equipment or other processes shall not be returned to the potable water system. Such water shall be discharged into a drainage system through an air gap or shall be utilized for nonpotable purposes.

608.10 Reuse of piping. Piping that has been utilized for any purpose other than conveying potable water shall not be utilized for conveying potable water.

608.11 Painting of water tanks. The interior surface of a potable water tank shall not be lined, painted or repaired with any material that changes the taste, odor, color or potability of the water supply when the tank is placed in, or returned to, service.

608.12 Pumps and other appliances. Water pumps, filters, softeners, tanks and other devices that handle or treat potable water shall be protected against contamination.

608.13 Backflow protection. Means of protection against backflow shall be provided in accordance with Sections 608.13.1 through 608.13.10.

608.13.1 Air gap. The minimum required air gap shall be measured vertically from the lowest end of a potable water outlet to the flood level rim of the fixture or receptacle into which such potable water outlet discharges. Air gaps shall conform to ASME A112.1.2 and air gap fittings shall conform to ASME A112.1.3.

608.13.2 Reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assemblies. Reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1013, AWWA C511, CSA B64.4 or CSA B64.4.1. Reduced pressure detector assembly backflow preventers shall conform to ASSE 1047. Devices shall be permitted to be installed where subject to continuous pressure conditions. The relief opening shall discharge by air gap and shall be prevented from being submerged.

608.13.3 Backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vent. Backflow preventers with intermediate atmospheric vents shall conform to ASSE 1012 or CSA B64.3. These devices shall be permitted to be installed where subject to continuous pressure conditions. These devices shall be prohibited as a means of protection where any hazardous chemical additives are introduced downstream of the device. The relief opening shall discharge by air gap and shall be prevented from being submerged.

608.13.4 Barometric loop. Barometric loops shall precede the point of connection and shall extend vertically to a height of 35 feet (10 668 mm). A barometric loop shall only be utilized as an atmospheric-type or pressure-type vacuum breaker.

608.13.5 Pressure vacuum breaker assemblies. Pressure vacuum breaker assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1020 or CSA B64.1.2. Spill-resistant vacuum breaker assemblies
shall comply with ASSE 1056. These assemblies are designed for installation under continuous pressure conditions where the critical level is installed at the required height. The critical level of a pressure vacuum breaker and a spill-resistant vacuum breaker assembly shall be set at not less than 12 inches (304 mm) above the highest elevation of downstream piping and the flood level rim of the fixture or device. Pressure vacuum breaker assemblies shall not be installed in locations where spillage could cause damage to the structure.

608.13.6 Atmospheric-type vacuum breakers. Pipe-applied atmospheric-type vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1001 or CSA B64.1.1. Hose-connection vacuum breakers shall conform to ASME A112.21.3, ASSE 1011, ASSE 1019, ASSE 1035, ASSE 1052, CSA B64.2, CSA B64.2.1, CSA B64.2.1.1, CSA B64.2.2 or CSA B64.7. Both types of vacuum breakers shall be installed with the outlet continuously open to the atmosphere. The critical level of the atmospheric vacuum breaker shall be set at not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the highest elevation of downstream piping and the flood level rim of the fixture or device.

608.13.7 Double check backflow prevention assemblies. Double check backflow prevention assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1015, CSA B64.5, CSA B64.5.1 or AWWA C510. Double check detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1048. These assemblies shall be capable of operating under continuous pressure conditions.

608.13.8 Spill-resistant pressure vacuum breaker assemblies. Spill-resistant pressure vacuum breaker assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1056 or CSA B64.1.3. These assemblies are designed for installation under continuous-pressure conditions where the critical level is installed at the required height.

608.13.9 Chemical dispenser backflow devices. Backflow devices for chemical dispensers shall comply with ASSE 1055 or shall be equipped with an air gap fitting.

### TABLE 608.15.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIXTURE</th>
<th>MINIMUM AIR GAP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Away from a wall (inches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lavatories and other fixtures with effective openings not greater than ( \frac{3}{4} ) inch in diameter</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sinks, laundry trays, gooseneck back faucets and other fixtures with effective openings not greater than ( \frac{1}{2} ) inch in diameter</strong></td>
<td>( \frac{1}{2} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Over-rim bath fillers and other fixtures with effective openings not greater than 1 inch in diameter</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drinking water fountains, single orifice not greater than ( \frac{1}{16} ) inch in diameter or multiple orifices with a total area of 0.150 square inch (area of circle ( \frac{1}{16} ) inch in diameter)</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Effective openings greater than 1 inch</strong></td>
<td>Two times the diameter of the effective opening</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645 mm².

a. Applicable where walls or obstructions are spaced from the nearest inside-edge of the spout opening a distance greater than three times the diameter of the effective opening for a single wall, or a distance greater than four times the diameter of the effective opening for two intersecting walls.

### 608.13.10 Dual check backflow preventer. Dual check backflow preventers shall conform to ASSE 1024 or CSA B64.6.

### 608.14 Location of backflow preventers. Access shall be provided to backflow preventers as specified by the manufacturer’s instructions.

### 608.14.1 Outdoor enclosures for backflow prevention devices. Outdoor enclosures for backflow prevention devices shall comply with ASSE 1060.

### 608.14.2 Protection of backflow preventers. Backflow preventers shall not be located in areas subject to freezing except where they can be removed by means of unions or are protected from freezing by heat, insulation or both.

### 608.14.2.1 Relief port piping. The termination of the piping from the relief port or air gap fitting of a backflow preventer shall discharge to an approved indirect waste receptor or to the outdoors where it will not cause damage or create a nuisance.

### 608.15 Protection of potable water outlets. All potable water openings and outlets shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section 608.15.1, 608.15.2, 608.15.3, 608.15.4, 608.15.4.1 or 608.15.4.2.

### 608.15.1 Protection by air gap. Openings and outlets shall be protected by an air gap between the opening and the fixture flood level rim as specified in Table 608.15.1. Openings and outlets equipped for hose connection shall be protected by means other than an air gap.

### 608.15.2 Protection by reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly. Openings and outlets shall be protected by a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly or a reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assembly on potable water supplies.

### 608.15.3 Protection by a backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vent. Openings and outlets shall be protected by a backflow preventer with an intermediate atmospheric vent.
608.15.4 Protection by a vacuum breaker. Openings and outlets shall be protected by atmospheric-type or pressure-type vacuum breakers. The critical level of the vacuum breaker shall be set not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the fixture or device. Fill valves shall be set in accordance with Section 425.3.1. Vacuum breakers shall not be installed under exhaust hoods or similar locations that will contain toxic fumes or vapors. Pipe-applied vacuum breakers shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the fixture, receptor or device served.

608.15.4.1 Deck-mounted and integral vacuum breakers. Approved deck-mounted or equipment-mounted vacuum breakers and faucets with integral atmospheric vacuum breakers or spill-resistant vacuum breaker assemblies shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions and the requirements for labeling with the critical level not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the flood level rim.

608.15.4.2 Hose connections. Sillcocks, hose bibbs, wall hydrants and other openings with a hose connection shall be protected by an atmospheric-type or pressure-type vacuum breaker or a permanently attached hose connection vacuum breaker.

Exceptions:
1. This section shall not apply to water heater and boiler drain valves that are provided with hose connection threads and that are intended only for tank or vessel draining.
2. This section shall not apply to water supply valves intended for connection of clothes washing machines where backflow prevention is otherwise provided or is integral with the machine.

608.16 Connections to the potable water system. Connections to the potable water system shall conform to Sections 608.16.1 through 608.16.10.

608.16.1 Beverage dispensers. The water supply connection to beverage dispensers shall be protected against backflow by a backflow preventer conforming to ASSE 1022 or by an air gap. The portion of the backflow preventer device downstream from the second check valve and the piping downstream therefrom shall not be affected by carbon dioxide gas.

608.16.2 Connections to boilers. The potable supply to the boiler shall be equipped with a backflow preventer with an intermediate atmospheric vent complying with ASSE 1012 or CSA B64.3. Where conditioning chemicals are introduced into the system, the potable water connection shall be protected by an air gap or a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer, complying with ASSE 1013, CSA B64.4 or AWWA C511.

608.16.3 Heat exchangers. Heat exchangers utilizing an essentially toxic transfer fluid shall be separated from the potable water by double-wall construction. An air gap open to the atmosphere shall be provided between the two walls. Heat exchangers utilizing an essentially nontoxic transfer fluid shall be permitted to be of single-wall construction.

608.16.4 Connections to automatic fire sprinkler systems and standpipe systems. The potable water supply to automatic fire sprinkler and standpipe systems shall be protected against backflow by a double check backflow prevention assembly, a double check fire protection backflow prevention assembly or a reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assembly.

Exceptions:
1. Where systems are installed as a portion of the water distribution system in accordance with the requirements of this code and are not provided with a fire department connection, isolation of the water supply system shall not be required.
2. Isolation of the water distribution system is not required for deluge, preaction or dry pipe systems.

608.16.4.1 Additives or nonpotable source. Where systems under continuous pressure contain chemical additives or antifreeze, or where systems are connected to a nonpotable secondary water supply, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly or a reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assembly. Where chemical additives or antifreeze are added to only a portion of an automatic fire sprinkler or standpipe system, the reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly or the reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assembly shall be permitted to be located so as to isolate that portion of the system. Where systems are not under continuous pressure, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by an air gap or an atmospheric vacuum breaker conforming to ASSE 1001 or CSA B64.1.1.

608.16.5 Connections to lawn irrigation systems. The potable water supply to lawn irrigation systems shall be protected against backflow by an atmospheric vacuum breaker, a pressure vacuum breaker assembly or a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly. Valves shall not be installed downstream from an atmospheric vacuum breaker. Where chemicals are introduced into the system, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly.

608.16.6 Connections subject to backpressure. Where a potable water connection is made to a nonpotable line, fixture, tank, vat, pump or other equipment subject to high-hazard backpressure, the potable water connection shall be protected by a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly.

608.16.7 Chemical dispensers. Where chemical dispensers connect to the potable water distribution system, the water supply system shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section 608.13.1, 608.13.2, 608.13.5, 608.13.6, 608.13.8 or 608.13.9.
608.16.8 Portable cleaning equipment. Where the portable cleaning equipment connects to the water distribution system, the water supply system shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section 608.13.1, 608.13.2, 608.13.3, 608.13.5, 608.13.6 or 608.13.8.

608.16.9 Dental pump equipment. Where dental pumping equipment connects to the water distribution system, the water supply system shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section 608.13.1, 608.13.2, 608.13.5, 608.13.6 or 608.13.8.

608.16.10 Coffee machines and noncarbonated beverage dispensers. The water supply connection to coffee machines and noncarbonated beverage dispensers shall be protected against backflow by a backflow preventer conforming to ASSE 1022 or by an air gap.

608.17 Protection of individual water supplies. Deleted.

SECTION 609 HEALTH CARE PLUMBING

609.1 Scope. This section shall govern those aspects of health care plumbing systems that differ from plumbing systems in other structures. Health care plumbing systems shall conform to the requirements of this section in addition to the other requirements of this code. The provisions of this section shall apply to the special devices and equipment installed and maintained in the following occupancies: nursing homes, homes for the aged, orphanages, infirmaries, first aid stations, psychiatric facilities, clinical, professional offices of dentists and doctors, mortuaries, educational facilities, surgery, dentistry, research and testing laboratories, establishments manufacturing pharmaceutical drugs and medicines and other structures with similar apparatus and equipment classified as plumbing.

609.2 Water service. Hospitals shall have two water service pipes installed in such a manner so as to minimize the potential for an interruption of the supply of water in the event of a water main or water service line failure.

609.3 Hot water. Hot water shall be provided to supply all of the hospital fixture, kitchen and laundry requirements. Special fixtures and equipment shall have hot water supplied at a temperature specified by the manufacturer. The hot water system shall be installed in accordance with Section 607.

609.4 Vacuum breaker installation. Vacuum breakers shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the fixture or device in accordance with Section 608. The flood level rim of hose connections shall be the maximum height at which any hose is utilized.

609.5 Prohibited water closet and clinical sink supply. Jet-or water-supplied orifices, except those supplied by the flush connections, shall not be located in or connected with a water closet bowl or clinical sink. This section shall not prohibit an approved bidet installation.

609.6 Clinical, hydrotherapeutic and radiological equipment. Clinical, hydrotherapeutic, radiological or any equipment that is supplied with water or that discharges to the waste system shall conform to the requirements of this section and Section 608.

609.7 Condensate drain trap seal. A water supply shall be provided for cleaning, flushing and resealing the condensate trap, and the trap shall discharge through an air gap in accordance with Section 608.

609.8 Valve leakage diverter. Each water sterilizer filled with water through directly connected piping shall be equipped with an approved leakage diverter or bleed line on the water supply control valve to indicate and conduct any leakage of unsterile water away from the sterile zone.

SECTION 610 DISINFECTION OF POTABLE WATER SYSTEM

610.1 General. Permitted new or repaired potable water systems shall be purged of deleterious matter and disinfected if required by the health authority or water purveyor prior to utilization. The method to be followed shall be that prescribed by the health authority or water purveyor having jurisdiction.

SECTION 611 DRINKING WATER TREATMENT UNITS

611.1 Design. Drinking water treatment units shall meet the requirements of NSF 42, NSF 44, NSF 53, NSF 60, NSF 62 or CSA B483.1.

611.2 Reverse osmosis systems. The discharge from a reverse osmosis drinking water treatment unit shall enter the drainage system through an air gap or an air gap device that meets the requirements of NSF 58 or CSA B483.1.

611.3 Connection tubing. The tubing to and from drinking water treatment units shall be of a size and material as recommended by the manufacturer. The tubing shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 42, NSF 44, NSF 53, NSF 58 or NSF 61.

SECTION 612 SOLAR SYSTEMS

612.1 Solar systems. The construction, installation, alterations and repair of systems, equipment and appliances intended to utilize solar energy for space heating or cooling, domestic hot water heating, swimming pool heating or process heating shall be in accordance with the International Mechanical Code.

SECTION 613 TEMPERATURE CONTROL DEVICES AND VALVES

613.1 Temperature-actuated mixing valves. Temperature-actuated mixing valves, which are installed to reduce water temperatures to defined limits, shall comply with ASSE 1016 or ASSE 1017. Such valves shall be installed at the hot water source.
SECTION 614
PARTIAL FIRE SPRINKLER PROTECTION IN ONE-
AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS

614.1 Partial fire protection. Nothing in this section shall be
deemed to prohibit the connection to the domestic water dis-
tribution system of a system of one or more fire suppression
sprinkler heads in one or more rooms of a one- or two-family
dwelling, nor shall such installation impose additional
requirements on the domestic water distribution system with
regard to pipe size, water pressure, meter size, monitoring or
alarm, provided that:

1. The sprinkler heads used are residential fast-response
type.
2. Each branch feeding one or more sprinkler heads shall
be provided with an isolation valve that shall be readily
accessible and the function thereof shall be marked.
3. Each isolation valve shall be identified as to function
with a tag or other device that shall indicate that the
system does not meet the requirements of NFPA 13D.
4. The piping installation and material shall comply with
the requirements of the North Carolina Plumbing
Code.

SECTION 615
FULL FIRE SPRINKLER PROTECTION
IN ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS

615.1 Full fire protection. Where a full fire sprinkler system
is installed, it shall comply with NFPA 13D.
CHAPTER 7
SANITARY DRAINAGE

SECTION 701
GENERAL

701.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of sanitary drainage systems.

701.2 Sewer required. Buildings in which plumbing fixtures are installed and premises having drainage piping shall be connected to a public sewer, where available, or an approved private sewage disposal system.

701.3 Separate sewer connection. A building having plumbing fixtures installed and intended for human habitation, occupancy or use on premises abutting on a street, alley or easement in which there is a public sewer shall have a separate connection with the sewer. Where located on the same lot, multiple buildings shall not be prohibited from connecting to a common building sewer that connects to the public sewer.

701.4 Sewage treatment. Sewage or other waste from a plumbing system that is deleterious to surface or subsurface waters shall not be discharged into the ground or into any waterway unless it has first been rendered innocuous through treatment approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

701.5 Damage to drainage system or public sewer. Wasteg detrimental to the public sewer system or detrimental to the functioning of the private sewage system shall be treated and disposed of in accordance with Section 1003.

701.6 Tests. The sanitary drainage system shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

701.7 Engineered systems. Engineered sanitary drainage systems shall conform to the provisions of Section 316.

701.8 Drainage piping in food service areas. Exposed soil or waste piping shall not be installed above any working, storage or eating surfaces in food service establishments.

SECTION 702
MATERIALS

702.1 Above-ground sanitary drainage and vent pipe. Above-ground soil, waste and vent pipe shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 702.1. Pipe fittings shall not be solvent-cemented inside of plastic pipe.

**Exception:** Plastic pipe with an inside diameter 2 inches (51 mm) and larger shall not be used for storm drainage drain, waste and vent conductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23 m) in height.

702.2 Underground building sanitary drainage and vent pipe. Underground building sanitary drainage and vent pipe shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 702.2.

702.3 Building sewer pipe. Building sewer pipe shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 702.3.

702.4 Fittings. Pipe fittings shall be approved for installation with the piping material installed and shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Table 702.4. Pipe fittings shall not be solvent-cemented inside of plastic pipe.

**Exception:** Plastic pipe fittings and plastic plumbing appurtenances with an inside diameter 2 inches (51 mm) and larger shall not be used for drain, waste and vent conductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23 m) in height.

702.5 Temperature rating. Direct connection of a steam exhaust, blowoff or drip pipe shall not be made with the building drainage system. Where the waste water temperature will be greater than 140°F (60°C), the sanitary drainage piping material shall be rated for the highest temperature of the waste water or approved cooling methods shall be provided.
## TABLE 702.2
**UNDERGROUND BUILDING DRAINAGE AND VENT PIPE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall</td>
<td>ASTM D2661; ASTM F628; ASTM F1488; CSA B181.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-iron pipe</td>
<td>ASTM A74; ASTM A888; CISPI 301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, L, M or DWV)</td>
<td>ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B251; ASTM B306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ductile iron pipe</td>
<td>ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyolefin pipe</td>
<td>ASTM F1412; CSA B181.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters, including SDR 42 (PS 20), SDR 35 (PS 28), SDR 35 (PS 46), SDR 35 (PS 50), SDR 40 (PS 100), PS 140 and PS 200; with a solid, cellular core or composite wall</td>
<td>ASTM F891; ASTM F1488; ASTM D2751</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25-inch O.D. and a solid, cellular core or composite wall</td>
<td>ASTM D2949, ASTM F1488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) plastic pipe</td>
<td>ASTM F1673; CSA B181.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 316L</td>
<td>ASME A 112.3.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

## TABLE 702.3
**BUILDING SEWER PIPE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATERIAL</th>
<th>STANDARD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters, including SDR 42 (PS 20), SDR 35 (PS 28), SDR 35 (PS 46), SDR 35 (PS 50), SDR 40 (PS 100), PS 140, SDR 23.5 (PS 150) and PS 200; with a solid, cellular core or composite wall</td>
<td>ASTM D2661; ASTM F628; ASTM F1488; CSA B181.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-iron pipe</td>
<td>ASTM A74; ASTM A888; CISPI 301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete pipe</td>
<td>ASTM C14; ASTM C76; CSA A257.1M; CSA A257.2M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K or L)</td>
<td>ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ductile iron pipe</td>
<td>ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe (SDR-PR)</td>
<td>ASTM F714</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters, including SDR 42 (PS 20), SDR 35 (PS 28), SDR 35 (PS 46), SDR 35 (PS 50), SDR 40 (PS 100), PS 140 and PS 200; with a solid, cellular core or composite wall</td>
<td>ASTM D2665; ASTM F891; ASTM F1488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25-inch O.D. and a solid, cellular core or composite wall</td>
<td>ASTM F891; ASTM F1488; ASTM D3034; CSA B182.2; CSA B182.4; ANSI/AWWA C900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 304 and 316L</td>
<td>ASTM D2949, ASTM F1488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitrified clay pipe</td>
<td>ASTM F1673; CSA B181.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
703.2 Drainage pipe in filled ground. Where a building sewer or building drain is installed in unstable fill or unstable ground, the drainage pipe shall be of cast-iron or ductile iron pipe, except that nonmetallic drains may be laid upon an approved continuous supporting system if installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions.

703.3 Sanitary and storm sewers. Where separate systems of sanitary drainage and storm drainage are installed in the same property, the sanitary and storm building sewers or drains shall be permitted to be laid side by side in one trench.

703.4 Existing building sewers and drains. Existing building sewers and drains shall connect with new building sewer and drainage systems only where found by examination and test to conform to the new system in quality of material. The code official shall notify the owner to make the changes necessary to conform to this code.

703.5 Cleanouts on building sewers. Cleanouts on building sewers shall be located as set forth in Section 708.

703.6 Combined sanitary and storm public sewer. Where the public sewer is a combined system for both sanitary and storm water, the sanitary sewer shall be connected independently to the public sewer.

SECTION 704
DRAINAGE PIPING INSTALLATION

704.1 Slope of horizontal drainage piping. Horizontal drainage piping shall be installed in uniform alignment at uniform slopes. The slope of a horizontal drainage pipe shall be not less than that indicated in Table 704.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIZE (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM SLOPE (inch per foot)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21/2 or less</td>
<td>1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 to 6</td>
<td>1/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 or larger</td>
<td>1/16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 inch per foot = 83.33 mm/m.

704.2 Change in size. The size of the drainage piping shall not be reduced in size in the direction of the flow. A 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) water closet connection shall not be considered as a reduction in size.

704.3 Connections to offsets and bases of stacks. Horizontal branches shall connect to the bases of stacks at a point located not less than 10 times the diameter of the drainage stack downstream from the stack. Horizontal branches shall connect to horizontal stack offsets at a point located not less than 10 times the diameter of the drainage stack downstream from the upper stack.

704.4 Future fixtures. Drainage piping for future fixtures shall terminate with an approved cap or plug.

704.5 Dead ends. In the installation or removal of any part of a drainage system, dead ends shall be prohibited. Cleanout

SECTION 703
BUILDING SEWER

703.1 Building sewer pipe near the water service. The proximity of a sewer to a water service shall comply with Section 603.2.

702.6 Chemical waste system. A chemical waste system shall be completely separated from the sanitary drainage system. The chemical waste shall be treated in accordance with Section 803.2 before discharging to the sanitary drainage system. The chemical waste shall be completely separated from the sanitary drainage system.

702.7 Lead bends and traps. The wall thickness of lead bends and traps shall be not less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
sections and approved future fixture drainage piping shall not be considered dead ends.

SECTION 705
JOINTS

705.1 General. This section contains provisions applicable to joints specific to sanitary drainage piping.

705.2 ABS plastic. Joints between ABS plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 705.2.1 through 705.2.3.

705.2.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints on drainage pipes shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM D3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall be installed only in underground systems unless otherwise approved. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.2.2 Solvent cementing. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Solvent cement that conforms to ASTM D2235 or CSA B181.1 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2235, ASTM D2661, ASTM F628 or CSA B181.1. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

705.2.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. Approved thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

705.3 Brass. Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections 705.3.1 through 705.3.4.

705.3.1 Brazed joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An approved flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

705.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.3.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

705.3.4 Welded joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded with an approved filler metal.

705.4 Cast iron. Joints between cast-iron pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 705.4.1 through 705.4.3.

705.4.1 Caulked joints. Joints for hub and spigot pipe shall be firmly packed with oakum or hemp. Molten lead shall be poured in one operation to a depth of not less than 1 inch (25 mm). The lead shall not recede more than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) below the rim of the hub and shall be caulked tight. Paint, varnish or other coatings shall not be permitted on the jointing material until after the joint has been tested and approved. Lead shall be run in one pour and shall be caulked tight. Acid-resistant rope and acidproof cement shall be permitted.

705.4.2 Compression gasket joints. Compression gaskets for hub and spigot pipe and fittings shall conform to ASTM C564 and shall be tested to ASTM C1563. Gaskets shall be compressed when the pipe is fully inserted.

705.4.3 Mechanical joint coupling. Mechanical joint couplings for hubless pipe and fittings shall consist of an elastomeric sealing sleeve and a metallic shield that comply with CISPI 310, ASTM C1277 or ASTM C1540. The elastomeric sealing sleeve shall conform to ASTM C564 or CSA B602 and shall be provided with a center stop. Mechanical joint couplings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.5 Concrete joints. Joints between concrete pipe and fittings shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C443, ASTM C1173, CSA A257.3M or CSA B602.

705.6 Copper pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 705.6.1 through 705.6.5.

705.6.1 Brazed joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An approved flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

705.6.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.6.3 Solder joints. Solder joints shall be made in accordance with the methods of ASTM B828. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32.

705.6.4 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

705.6.5 Welded joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded with an approved filler metal.

705.7 Copper tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 705.7.1 through 705.7.3.

705.7.1 Brazed joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An approved flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

705.7.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.7.3 Solder joints. Solder joints shall be made in accordance with the methods of ASTM B828. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32.

705.8 Borosilicate glass joints. Glass-to-glass connections shall be made with a bolted compression-type, 300 series stainless steel coupling with contoured acid-resistant elastomeric compression ring and a fluorocarbon polymer inner seal ring; or with caulked joints in accordance with Section 705.8.1.
705.8.1 Caulked joints. Lead-caulked joints for hub and spigot soil pipe shall be firmly packed with oakum or hemp and filled with molten lead not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in depth and not to recede more than \( 1/2 \) inch (3.2 mm) below the rim of the hub. Paint, varnish or other coatings shall not be permitted on the jointing material until after the joint has been tested and approved. Lead shall be run in one pouring and shall be caulked tight. Acid-resistant rope and acidproof cement shall be permitted.

705.9 Steel. Joints between galvanized steel pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 705.9.1 and 705.9.2.

705.9.1 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

705.9.2 Mechanical joints. Joints shall be made with an approved elastomeric seal. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.10 Lead. Joints between lead pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 705.10.1 and 705.10.2.

705.10.1 Burned. Burned joints shall be uniformly fused together into one continuous piece. The thickness of the joint shall be at least as thick as the lead being joined. The filler metal shall be of the same material as the pipe.

705.10.2 Wiped. Joints shall be fully wiped, with an exposed surface on each side of the joint not less than \( 1/8 \) inch (9.5 mm) thick at the thickest point.

705.11 PVC plastic. Joints between PVC plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 705.11.1 through 705.11.3.

705.11.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints on drainage pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM D3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems, unless otherwise approved. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.11.2 Solvent cementing. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. A purple primer or an ultraviolet purple primer that conforms to ASTM F656 shall be applied. When an ultraviolet primer is used, the installer shall provide an ultraviolet light to the inspector to be used during the inspection. Solvent cement not purple in color and conforming to ASTM D2564, CSA B137.3, CSA B181.2 or CSA B182.1 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet and shall be in accordance with ASTM D2855. Solvent cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground. Clear primer conforming to ASTM F656 may be applied to all joint surfaces where the piping is exposed under sinks and in buildings.

705.11.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. Approved thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

705.12 Vitrified clay. Joints between vitrified clay pipe and fittings shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C425, ASTM C1173 or CSA B602.

705.13 Polyethylene plastic pipe. Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and fittings shall be underground and shall comply with Section 705.13.1 or 705.13.2.

705.13.1 Heat-fusion joints. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. All joint surfaces shall be cut, heated to melting temperature and joined using tools specifically designed for the operation. Joints shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2657 and the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.13.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints in drainage piping shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM D3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.


705.14.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polyolefin pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polyolefin fittings or electrofusion polyolefin fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F1412 or CSA B181.3.

705.14.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.15 Polyvinylidene fluoride plastic. Joints between polyvinylidene plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 705.15.1 and 705.15.2.

705.15.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polyvinylidene fluoride pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polyvinylidene fluoride fittings or electrofusion polyvinylidene fittings and couplings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F1673.

705.15.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.16 Joints between different materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical-sealing type conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM C1460 or ASTM C1461. Connectors and adapters shall be approved for the application and such joints shall have an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C425, ASTM C443, ASTM C564, ASTM C1440, ASTM F477, CSA A257.3M or CSA B602, or as required in Sections 705.16.1 through 705.16.7. Joints between glass pipe and other types of materials shall be made with adapters having a TFE seal. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.
705.16.1 Copper or copper-alloy tubing to cast-iron hub pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing and cast-iron hub pipe shall be made with a brass ferrule or compression joint. The copper or copper-alloy tubing shall be soldered to the ferrule in an approved manner, and the ferrule shall be joined to the cast-iron hub by a caulked joint or a mechanical compression joint.

705.16.2 Copper or copper-alloy tubing to galvanized steel pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing and galvanized steel pipe shall be made with a brass converter fitting or dielectric fitting. The copper tubing shall be soldered to the fitting in an approved manner, and the fitting shall be screwed to the threaded pipe.

705.16.3 Cast-iron pipe to galvanized steel or brass pipe. Joints between cast-iron and galvanized steel or brass pipe shall be made by either caulked or threaded joints or with an approved adapter fitting.

705.16.4 Plastic pipe or tubing to other piping material. Joints between different types of plastic pipe or between plastic pipe and other piping material shall be made with an approved adapter fitting. Joints between plastic pipe and cast-iron hub pipe shall be made by a caulked joint or a mechanical compression joint.

705.16.5 Lead pipe to other piping material. Joints between lead pipe and other piping material shall be made by a wiped joint to a caulking ferrule, soldering nipple or bushing or shall be made with an approved adapter fitting.

705.16.6 Borosilicate glass to other materials. Joints between glass pipe and other types of materials shall be made with adapters having a TFE seal and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.16.7 Stainless steel drainage systems to other materials. Joints between stainless steel drainage systems and other piping materials shall be made with approved mechanical couplings.

705.17 Drainage slip joints. Slip joints shall comply with Section 405.8.

705.18 Caulking ferrules. Ferrules shall be of red brass and shall be in accordance with Table 705.18.

705.19 Soldering bushings. Soldering bushings shall be of red brass and shall be in accordance with Table 705.19.

705.20 Stainless steel drainage systems. O-ring joints for stainless steel drainage systems shall be made with an approved elastomeric seal.

### TABLE 705.19
SOLDERING BUSHING SPECIFICATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIPE SIZES (inches)</th>
<th>INSIDE DIAMETER (inches)</th>
<th>LENGTH (inches)</th>
<th>MINIMUM WEIGHT EACH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4/14</td>
<td>1 pound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4/12</td>
<td>1 pound 12 ounces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2 pounds 8 ounces</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 ounce = 28.35 g, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

705.21 Coextruded composite ABS pipe, joints. Joints between coextruded composite pipe with an ABS outer layer or ABS fittings shall comply with Sections 705.21.1 and 705.21.2.

705.21.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints on drainage pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM D3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems, unless otherwise approved. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.21.2 Solvent cementing. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Solvent cement that conforms to ASTM D2235 or CSA B181.1 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2235, ASTM D2661, ASTM F628 or CSA B181.1. Solvent cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

705.22 Coextruded composite PVC pipe, joints. Joints between coextruded composite pipe with a PVC outer layer or PVC fittings shall comply with Sections 705.22.1 and 705.22.2.

705.22.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints on drainage pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM D3212. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems, unless otherwise approved. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

705.22.2 Solvent cementing. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. A purple primer or an ultraviolet purple primer that conforms to ASTM F636 shall be applied. When an ultraviolet primer is used, the installer shall provide an ultraviolet light to the inspector to be used during the inspection. Solvent cement not purple in color and conforming to ASTM D2564, CSA B137.3, CSA B181.2 or CSA B182.1 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet and shall be in accordance with ASTM D2855. Solvent cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

### SECTION 706
CONNECTIONS BETWEEN DRAINAGE PIPING AND FITTINGS

706.1 Connections and changes in direction. All connections and changes in direction of the sanitary drainage system shall be made with approved drainage fittings. Connections
between drainage piping and fixtures shall conform to Section 405.

706.2 Obstructions. The fittings shall not have ledges, shoulders or reductions capable of retarding or obstructing flow in the piping. Threaded drainage pipe fittings shall be of the recessed drainage type. This section shall not be applicable to tubular waste fittings used to convey vertical flow upstream of the trap seal liquid level of a fixture trap.

706.3 Installation of fittings. Fittings shall be installed to guide sewage and waste in the direction of flow. Change in direction shall be made by fittings installed in accordance with Table 706.3. Change in direction by combination fittings, side inlets or increasers shall be installed in accordance with Table 706.3 based on the pattern of flow created by the fitting. Double sanitary tee patterns shall not receive the discharge of appliances with pumping action discharge.

**TABLE 706.3 FITTINGS FOR CHANGE IN DIRECTION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF FITTING PATTERN</th>
<th>CHANGE IN DIRECTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Horizontal to vertical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sixth bend</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eighth bend</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sixth bend</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter bend</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short sweep</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long sweep</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanitary tee</td>
<td>Xc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wye</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination wye and eighth bend</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The fittings shall only be permitted for a 2-inch or smaller sink or lavatory fixture drain.

b. Two inches or larger.

c. For a limitation on double sanitary tees, see Section 706.3.

d. May be used only within 12 inches below water closet flange measured to centerline of the quarter bend.

e. This fitting shall only be permitted to be used as the first fitting directly behind the fixture for drains 2 inches and smaller, except clothes washers.

f. The heel inlet connection of a quarter bend may be used as a wet or dry vent if the heel inlet connection of the quarter bend is located in the vertical position. The heel or side inlet connection may be used as a wet vent if the quarter bend is located directly below a water closet or other fixture with one integral trap.

**SECTION 707 PROHIBITED JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS**

707.1 Prohibited joints. The following types of joints and connections shall be prohibited:

1. Cement or concrete joints.

2. Mastic or hot-pour bituminous joints.

3. Joints made with fittings not approved for the specific installation.

4. Joints between different diameter pipes made with elastomeric rolling O-rings.

5. Solvent-cement joints between different types of plastic pipe.


**SECTION 708 CLEANOUTS**

708.1 Cleanouts required. Cleanouts shall be provided for drainage piping in accordance with Sections 708.1.1 through 708.1.11.

708.1.1 Gravity horizontal drains and building drains. Horizontal drainage pipes in buildings shall have cleanouts located at intervals of not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm). Building drains shall have cleanouts located at intervals of not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) except where manholes are used instead of cleanouts, the manholes shall be located at intervals of not more than 400 feet (122 m). The interval length shall be measured from the cleanout or manhole opening, along the developed length of the piping to the next drainage fitting providing access for cleaning, the end of the horizontal drain or the end of the building drain.

Exception: Horizontal fixture drain piping serving a non-removable trap shall not be required to have a cleanout for the section of piping between the trap and the vent connection for such trap.

708.1.2 Gravity building sewers. Building sewers smaller than 8 inches (203 mm) shall have cleanouts located at intervals of not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm). Building sewers 8 inches (203 mm) and larger shall have a manhole located not more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) from the junction of the building drain and building sewer and at intervals of not more than 400 feet (122 m). The interval length shall be measured from the cleanout or manhole opening, along the developed length of the piping to the next drainage fitting providing access for cleaning, a manhole or the end of the building sewer.

708.1.3 Building drain and building sewer junction. There shall be a cleanout at the junction of the building drain and the building sewer. The cleanout shall be outside the building wall and shall be brought up to the finished ground level. An approved two-way cleanout is allowed to be used at this location to serve as a required cleanout for both the building drain and building sewer. The cleanout at the junction of the building drain and building sewer shall not be required if the cleanout on a 3-inch (76 mm) or larger diameter soil stack is located within a developed length of not more than 15 feet (4572 mm) from the building drain and building sewer connection and is extended to the outside of the building. The minimum size of the cleanout at the junction of the building drain and building sewer shall comply with Section 708.1.5.

708.1.4 Changes of direction. One cleanout shall be required for every four horizontal 45-degree (0.79 rad) changes located in series [a long sweep is equivalent to two 45-degree (0.79 rad) bends].
708.1.5 Cleanout size. Cleanouts shall be the same size as the piping served by the cleanout, except that cleanouts for piping larger than 4 inches (102 mm) need not be larger than 4 inches (102 mm).

Exceptions:
1. P traps connected to the drainage piping with slip joints or ground joint connections.
2. P traps into which floor drains, shower drains or tub drains with removable strainers discharge.
3. P traps into which the straight-through type waste and overflow discharge with the overflow connecting to the top of the tee.
4. P traps into which residential washing machines discharge.
5. Test tees or cleanouts in a vertical pipe.
6. Cleanout near the junction of the building drain and the building sewer which may be rodded both ways.
7. Water closets for the water closet fixture drain only.
8. Cast-iron cleanout sizing shall be in accordance with referenced standards in Table 702.4, ASTM A74 for hub and spigot fittings or ASTM A888 or CISPI 301 for hubless fittings.
9. Cleanouts located on stacks can be one size smaller than the stack size.
10. A removable P trap with slip or ground joint connections can serve as a cleanout for drain piping that is one size larger than the P trap size.

708.1.6 Cleanout plugs. Cleanout plugs shall be of brass, plastic or other approved materials. Cleanout plugs for borosilicate glass piping systems shall be of borosilicate glass. Brass cleanout plugs shall conform to ASTM A74 and shall be limited for use only on metallic piping systems. Plastic cleanout plugs shall conform to the referenced standards for plastic pipe fittings, as indicated in Table 702.4. Cleanout plugs shall have a raised square head, a countersunk square head or a countersunk slot head. Where a cleanout plug will have a trim cover screw installed into the plug, the plug shall be manufactured with a blind end threaded hole for such purpose.

708.1.7 Manholes. Manholes and manhole covers shall be of an approved type. Manholes located inside of a building shall have gas-tight covers that require tools for removal.

708.1.8 Installation arrangement. The installation arrangement of a cleanout shall enable cleaning of drainage piping only in the direction of drainage flow.

Exceptions:
1. Test tees serving as cleanouts.
2. A two-way cleanout installation that is approved for meeting the requirements of Section 708.1.3.

708.1.9 Required clearance. Cleanouts for 6-inch (153 mm) and smaller piping shall be provided with a clearance of not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from, and perpendicular to, the face of the opening to any obstruction. Cleanouts for 8-inch (203 mm) and larger piping shall be provided with a clearance of not less than 36 inches (914 mm) from, and perpendicular to, the face of the opening to any obstruction.

708.1.10 Cleanout access. Required cleanouts shall not be installed in concealed locations. For the purposes of this section, concealed locations include, but are not limited to, the inside of plenums, within walls, within floor/ceiling assemblies, below grade and in crawl spaces where the height from the crawl space floor to the nearest obstruction along the path from the crawl space opening to the cleanout location is less than 24 inches (610 mm). Cleanouts with openings at a finished wall shall have the face of the opening located within 1/2 inches (38 mm) of the finished wall surface. Cleanouts located below grade shall be extended to grade level so that the top of the cleanout plug is at or above grade. A cleanout installed in a floor or walkway that will not have a trim cover installed shall have a countersunk plug installed so that the top surface of the plug is flush with the finished surface of the floor or walkway.

708.1.10.1 Cleanout plug trim covers. Trim covers and access doors for cleanout plugs shall be designed for such purposes and shall be approved. Trim cover fasteners that thread into cleanout plugs shall be corrosion resistant. Cleanout plugs shall not be covered with mortar, plaster or any other permanent material.

708.1.10.2 Floor cleanout assemblies. Where it is necessary to protect a cleanout plug from the loads of vehicular traffic, cleanout assemblies in accordance with ASME A112.36.2M shall be installed.

708.1.11 Prohibited use. The use of a threaded cleanout opening to add a fixture or to extend piping shall be prohibited except where another cleanout of equal size is installed with the required access and clearance.

SECTION 709
FIXTURE UNITS

709.1 Values for fixtures. Drainage fixture unit values as given in Table 709.1 designate the relative load weight of different kinds of fixtures that shall be employed in estimating the total load carried by a soil or waste pipe, and shall be used in connection with Tables 710.1(1) and 710.1(2) of sizes for soil, waste and vent pipes for which the permissible load is given in terms of fixture units.

709.2 Fixtures not listed in Table 709.1. Fixtures not listed in Table 709.1 shall have a drainage fixture unit load based on the outlet size of the fixture in accordance with Table 709.2. The minimum trap size for unlisted fixtures shall be the size of the drainage outlet but not less than 1 1/4 inches (32 mm).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIXTURE TYPE</th>
<th>DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNIT VALUE AS LOAD FACTORS</th>
<th>MINIMUM SIZE OF TRAP (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Automatic clothes washers, commercialg</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic clothes washers, residential</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathroom group as defined in Section 202</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1.6 gpf water closet)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathroom group as defined in Section 202</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(water closet flushing greater than 1.6 gpf)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathtub (with or without overhead shower or whirlpool attachments)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bidet</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination sink and tray</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dental lavatory</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dental unit or cuspidor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dishwashing machine, domestic</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking fountain</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency floor drain</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor drains</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor sinks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitchen sink, domestic</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitchen sink, domestic with food waste disposer and/or dishwasher</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laundry tray (1 or 2 compartments)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavatory</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shower (based on the total flow rate through showerheads and body sprays)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow rate:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7 gpm or less</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater than 5.7 gpm to 12.3 gpm</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater than 12.3 gpm to 25.8 gpm</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater than 25.8 gpm to 55.6 gpm</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service sink</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sink</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinal</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinal, 1 gallon per flush or less</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinal, nonwater supplied</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wash sink (circular or multiple) each set of faucets</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, flushometer tank, public or private</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, private (1.6 gpf)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, private (flushing greater than 1.6 gpf)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, public (1.6 gpf)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet, public (flushing greater than 1.6 gpf)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Note d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, gpf = gallon per flushing cycle, gpm = gallon per minute.

a. For traps larger than 3 inches, use Table 709.2.
b. A showerhead over a bathtub or whirlpool bathtub attachment does not increase the drainage fixture unit value.
c. See Sections 709.2 through 709.4.1 for methods of computing unit value of fixtures not listed in this table or for rating of devices with intermittent flows.
d. Trap size shall be consistent with the fixture outlet size.
e. For the purpose of computing loads on building drains and sewers, water closets and urinals shall not be rated at a lower drainage fixture unit unless the lower values are confirmed by testing.
f. For fixtures added to a bathroom group, add the dfu value of those additional fixtures to the bathroom group fixture count.
g. See Section 406.2 for sizing requirements for fixture drain, branch drain and drainage stack for an automatic clothes washer standpipe.
h. See Sections 709.4 and 709.4.1.

i. Fixture arm and trap shall be 1 1/2 inches minimum; vertical drain shall be 2 inches minimum.
SANITARY DRAINAGE

709.3 Values for continuous and semicontinuous flow. Drainage fixture unit values for continuous and semicontinuous flow into a drainage system (hub drains, sewage lift pumps, etc.) shall be computed on the basis that 1 gpm (0.06 L/s) of flow is equivalent to two fixture units.

709.4 Values for indirect waste receptor. The drainage fixture unit load of an indirect waste receptor receiving the discharge of indirectly connected fixtures shall be the sum of the drainage fixture unit values of the fixtures that discharge to the receptor, but not less than the drainage fixture unit value given for the indirect waste receptor in Table 709.1 or 709.2.

709.4.1 Clear-water waste receptors. Where waste receptors such as floor drains, floor sinks and hub drains receive only clear-water waste from display cases, refrigerated display cases, ice bins, coolers and freezers, such receptors shall have a drainage fixture unit value of one-half.

SECTION 710

DRAINAGE SYSTEM SIZING

710.1 Maximum fixture unit load. The maximum number of drainage fixture units connected to a given size of building sewer, building drain or horizontal branch of the building drain shall be determined using Table 710.1(1). The maximum number of drainage fixture units connected to a given size of horizontal branch or vertical soil or waste stack shall be determined using Table 710.1(2).

710.1.1 Horizontal stack offsets. Horizontal stack offsets shall be sized as required for building drains in accordance with Table 710.1(1), except as required by Section 711.3.

710.1.2 Vertical stack offsets. Vertical stack offsets shall be sized as required for straight stacks in accordance with Table 710.1(2), except where required to be sized as a building drain in accordance with Section 711.1.1.

710.2 Future fixtures. Where provision is made for the future installation of fixtures, those provided for shall be considered in determining the required sizes of drain pipes.

### TABLE 709.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DRAINAGE OR TRAP SIZE</th>
<th>DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNIT VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 1/4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

### TABLE 710.1(1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BUILDING DRAINS AND SEWERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DIAMETER OF PIPE (inches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slope per foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/16 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/8 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4 inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 inch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 710.1(2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HORIZONTAL FIXTURE BRANCHES AND STACKS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DIAMETER OF PIPE (inches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAXIMUM NUMBER OF DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS (fdu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Does not include branches of the building drain. Refer to Table 710.1(1).

b. Stacks shall be sized based on the total accumulated connected load at each story or branch interval. As the total accumulated connected load decreases, stacks are permitted to be reduced in size. Stack diameters shall not be reduced to less than one-half of the diameter of the largest stack size required.

c. Sizing load based on design criteria.
d. No more than three water closets.
e. 20 percent less for circuit-vented fixture branches.
f. Minimum of 2-inch diameter underground.
g. The minimum size of any branches serving a water closet shall be 3 inches.
SECTION 711
OFFSETS IN DRAINAGE PIPING IN BUILDINGS OF FIVE STORIES OR MORE

711.1 Horizontal branch connections above or below vertical stack offsets. If a horizontal branch connects to the stack within 2 feet (610 mm) above or below a vertical stack offset, and the offset is located more than four branch intervals below the top of the stack, the offset shall be vented in accordance with Section 907.

711.1.1 Omission of vents for vertical stack offsets. Vents for vertical offsets required by Section 711.1 shall not be required where the stack and its offset are sized as a building drain [see Table 710.1(1)].

711.2 Horizontal stack offsets. A stack with a horizontal offset located more than four branch intervals below the top of the stack shall be vented in accordance with Section 907 and sized as follows:

1. The portion of the stack above the offset shall be sized as for a vertical stack based on the total number of drainage fixture units above the offset.
2. The offset shall be sized in accordance with Section 710.1.1.
3. The portion of the stack below the offset shall be sized as for the offset or based on the total number of drainage fixture units on the entire stack, whichever is larger [see Table 710.1(2), Column 5].

711.2.1 Omission of vents for horizontal stack offsets. Vents for horizontal stack offsets required by Section 711.2 shall not be required where the stack and its offset are one pipe size larger than required for a building drain [see Table 710.1(1)] and the entire stack and offset are not less in cross-sectional area than that required for a straight stack plus the area of an offset vent as provided for in Section 907.

711.3 Offsets below lowest branch. Where a vertical offset occurs in a soil or waste stack below the lowest horizontal branch, a change in diameter of the stack because of the offset shall not be required. If a horizontal offset occurs in a soil or waste stack below the lowest horizontal branch, the required diameter of the offset and the stack below it shall be determined as for a building drain in accordance with Table 710.1(1).

SECTION 712
SUMPS AND EJECTORS

712.1 Building subdrains. Building subdrains that cannot be discharged to the sewer by gravity flow shall be discharged into a tightly covered and vented sump from which the liquid shall be lifted and discharged into the building gravity drainage system by automatic pumping equipment or other approved method. In other than existing structures, the sump shall not receive drainage from any piping within the building capable of being discharged by gravity to the building sewer.

712.2 Valves required. A check valve, a full open valve and a means for cleanout located on the discharge side of the check valve shall be installed in the pump or ejector discharge piping between the pump or ejector and the gravity drainage system. Access shall be provided to such valves. Such valves shall be located above the sump cover required by Section 712.1 or, where the discharge pipe from the ejector is below grade, the valves shall be accessibly located outside the sump below grade in an access pit with a removable access cover.

712.3 Sump design. The sump pump, pit and discharge piping shall conform to the requirements of Sections 712.3.1 through 712.3.5.

712.3.1 Sump pump. The sump pump capacity and head shall be appropriate to anticipated use requirements.

712.3.2 Sump pit. The sump pit shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) in diameter and not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth, unless otherwise approved. The pit shall be accessible and located such that all drainage flows into the pit by gravity. The sump pit shall be constructed of tile, concrete, steel, plastic or other approved materials. The pit bottom shall be solid and provide permanent support for the pump. The sump pit shall be fitted with a gas-tight removable cover that is installed flush with grade or floor level, or above grade or floor level. The cover shall be adequate to support anticipated loads in the area of use. The sump pit shall be vented in accordance with Chapter 9.

712.3.3 Discharge pipe and fittings. Discharge pipe and fittings serving sump pumps and ejectors shall be constructed of materials pressure-rated for not less than the maximum discharge pressure of the pump in accordance with Sections 712.3.3.1 and 712.3.3.2 and shall be approved.

712.3.3.1 Materials. Pipe and fitting materials shall be constructed of ABS plastic pipe, brass, copper, CPVC, ductile iron, PE, or PVC, excluding cell-core products.

712.3.3.2 Ratings. Pipe and fittings shall be rated for the maximum system operating pressure and temperature. Pipe fitting materials shall be compatible with the pipe material. Where pipe and fittings are buried in the earth, they shall be suitable for burial.

712.3.4 Maximum effluent level. The effluent level control shall be adjusted and maintained to at all times prevent the effluent in the sump from rising to within 2 inches (51 mm) of the invert of the gravity drain inlet into the sump.

712.3.4.1 Sump alarms. Sumps that discharge by means of automatic pumping equipment shall be provided with an approved, electrically operated high-water indicating alarm. A remote sensor shall activate the alarm when the fluid level exceeds a preset level that is less than the maximum capacity of the sump. The alarm shall function to provide an audiovisual signal to occupants within the building. Electrical power for the alarm shall be supplied through a branch circuit separate from that supplying the pump motor.

Exception: Sump alarms are not required for single point-of-use sump pumps and macerating toilet systems.
712.3.5 Pump connection to the drainage system. Pumps connected to the drainage system shall connect to a building sewer, building drain, soil stack, waste stack or horizontal branch drain. Where the discharge line connects into horizontal drainage piping, the connection shall be made through a wye fitting into the top of the drainage piping and such wye fitting shall be located not less than 10 pipe diameters from the base of any soil stack, waste stack or fixture drain.

712.4 Sewage pumps and sewage ejectors. A sewage pump or sewage ejector shall automatically discharge the contents of the sump to the building drainage system. The ejector pump discharge pipe shall not discharge directly into a septic tank. The pumped line shall discharge laterally into a 4-inch (102 mm) gravity line not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the connection to the tank through a lateral wye branch.

712.4.1 Macerating toilet systems. Macerating toilet systems shall comply with ASME A112.3.4/CSA B45.9 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

712.4.2 Capacity. A sewage pump or sewage ejector shall have the capacity and head for the application requirements. Pumps or ejectors that receive the discharge of water closets shall be capable of handling spherical solids with a diameter of up to and including 2 inches (51 mm). Other pumps or ejectors shall be capable of handling spherical solids with a diameter of up to and including 1 inch (25 mm). The capacity of a pump or ejector based on the diameter of the discharge pipe shall be not less than that indicated in Table 712.4.2.

Exceptions:

1. Grinder pumps or grinder ejectors that receive the discharge of water closets shall have a discharge opening of not less than 1 1/2 inches (32 mm).
2. Macerating toilet assemblies that serve single water closets shall have a discharge opening of not less than 1 3/8 inch (19.1 mm).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIAMETER OF THE DISCHARGE PIPE (inches)</th>
<th>CAPACITY OF PUMP OR EJECTOR (gpm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

SECTION 713

HEALTH CARE PLUMBING

713.1 Scope. This section shall govern those aspects of health care plumbing systems that differ from plumbing systems in other structures. Health care plumbing systems shall conform to this section in addition to the other requirements of this code. The provisions of this section shall apply to the special devices and equipment installed and maintained in the following occupancies: nursing homes; homes for the aged; orphanages; infirmaries; first aid stations; psychiatric facilities; clinics; professional offices of dentists and doctors; mortuaries; educational facilities; surgery, dentistry, research and testing laboratories; establishments manufacturing pharmaceutical drugs and medicines; and other structures with similar apparatus and equipment classified as plumbing.

713.2 Bedpan washers and clinical sinks. Bedpan washers and clinical sinks shall connect to the drainage and vent system in accordance with the requirements for a water closet. Bedpan washers shall also connect to a local vent.

713.3 Indirect waste. Sterilizers, steamers and condensers shall discharge to the drainage through an indirect waste pipe by means of an air gap. Where a battery of not more than three sterilizers discharges to an individual receptor, the distance between the receptor and a sterilizer shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm). The indirect waste pipe on a bedpan steam shall be trapped.

713.4 Vacuum system station. Ready access shall be provided to vacuum system station receptacles. Such receptacles shall be built into cabinets or recesses and shall be visible.

713.5 Bottle system. Vacuum (fluid suction) systems intended for collecting, removing and disposing of blood, pus or other fluids by the bottle system shall be provided with receptacles equipped with an overflow prevention device at each vacuum outlet station.

713.6 Central disposal system equipment. Central vacuum (fluid suction) systems shall provide continuous service. Systems equipped with collecting or control tanks shall provide for draining and cleaning of the tanks while the system is in operation. In hospitals, the system shall be connected to the emergency power system. The exhausts from a vacuum pump serving a vacuum (fluid suction) system shall discharge separately to open air above the roof.

713.7 Central vacuum or disposal systems. Where the waste from a central vacuum (fluid suction) system of the barometric-lag, collection-tank or bottle-disposal type is connected to the drainage system, the waste shall be directly connected to the sanitary drainage system through a trapped waste.

713.7.1 Piping. The piping of a central vacuum (fluid suction) system shall be of corrosion-resistant material with a smooth interior surface. A branch shall be not less than 1 1/2-inch (12.7 mm) nominal pipe size for one outlet and shall be sized in accordance with the number of vacuum outlets. A main shall be not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal pipe size. The pipe sizing shall be increased in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions as stations are increased.

713.7.2 Velocity. The velocity of airflow in a central vacuum (fluid suction) system shall be less than 5,000 feet per minute (25 m/s).

713.8 Vent connections prohibited. Connections between local vents serving bedpan washers or sterilizer vents serving sterilizing apparatus and normal sanitary plumbing systems are prohibited. Only one type of apparatus shall be served by local vents.

713.9 Local vents and stacks for bedpan washers. Bedpan washers shall be vented to open air above the roof by means of one or more local vents. The local vent for a bedpan
washer shall be not less than a 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) pipe. A local vent serving a single bedpan washer is permitted to drain to the fixture served.

713.9.1 Multiple installations. Where bedpan washers are located above each other on more than one floor, a local vent stack is permitted to be installed to receive the local vent on the various floors. Not more than three bedpan washers shall be connected to a 2-inch (51 mm) local vent stack, not more than six to a 3-inch (76 mm) local vent stack and not more than 12 to a 4-inch (102 mm) local vent stack. In multiple installations, the connections between a bedpan washer local vent and a local vent stack shall be made with tee or tee-wye sanitary pattern drainage fittings installed in an upright position.

713.9.2 Trap required. The bottom of the local vent stack, except where serving only one bedpan washer, shall be drained by means of a trapped and vented waste connection to the sanitary drainage system. The trap and waste shall be the same size as the local vent stack.

713.9.3 Trap seal maintenance. A water supply pipe not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in diameter shall be taken from the flush supply of each bedpan washer on the discharge or fixture side of the vacuum breaker, shall be trapped to form not less than a 3-inch (76 mm) water seal and shall be connected to the local vent stack on each floor. The water supply shall be installed so as to provide a supply of water to the local vent stack for cleansing and drain trap seal maintenance each time a bedpan washer is flushed.

713.10 Sterilizer vents and stacks. Multiple installations of pressure and nonpressure sterilizers shall have the vent connections to the sterilizer vent stack made by means of inverted wye fittings. Access shall be provided to vent connections for the purpose of inspection and maintenance.

713.10.1 Drainage. The connection between sterilizer vent or exhaust openings and the sterilizer vent stack shall be designed and installed to drain to the funnel or basket-type waste fitting. In multiple installations, the sterilizer vent stack shall be drained separately to the lowest sterilizer funnel or basket-type waste fitting or receptor.

713.11 Sterilizer vent stack sizes. Sterilizer vent stack sizes shall comply with Sections 713.11.1 through 713.11.4.

713.11.1 Bedpan steamers. The minimum size of a sterilizer vent serving a bedpan steamer shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter. Multiple installations shall be sized in accordance with Table 713.11.1.

713.11.2 Boiling-type sterilizers. The size of a sterilizer vent stack shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter where serving a utensil sterilizer and not less than 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter where serving an instrument sterilizer. Combinations of boiling-type sterilizer vent connections shall be sized in accordance with Table 713.11.1.

713.11.3 Pressure sterilizers. Pressure sterilizer vent stacks shall be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) minimum. Those serving combinations of pressure sterilizer exhaust connections shall be sized in accordance with Table 713.11.3.

713.11.4 Pressure instrument washer sterilizer sizes. The diameter of a sterilizer vent stack serving an instrument washer sterilizer shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Not more than two sterilizers shall be installed on a 2-inch (51 mm) stack, and not more than four sterilizers shall be installed on a 3-inch (76 mm) stack.

### TABLE 713.11.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STACK SIZE (Inches)</th>
<th>CONNECTION SIZE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2&quot;</td>
<td>2&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2&quot;</td>
<td>1&quot; or 0&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/4&quot;</td>
<td>3 or 2 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3&quot;</td>
<td>4 or 2 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1/8&quot;</td>
<td>5 or 4 or 2 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4&quot;</td>
<td>6 or 4 or 2 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 1/8&quot;</td>
<td>7 or 5 or 3 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5&quot;</td>
<td>7 or 5 or 3 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

### TABLE 713.11.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STACK SIZE (Inches)</th>
<th>CONNECTION SIZE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2&quot;</td>
<td>1&quot; 1 1/4&quot; 4&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2&quot;</td>
<td>2 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/4&quot;</td>
<td>3 or 2 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3&quot;</td>
<td>4 or 2 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1/8&quot;</td>
<td>5 or 4 or 2 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4&quot;</td>
<td>6 or 4 or 2 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 1/8&quot;</td>
<td>7 or 5 or 3 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5&quot;</td>
<td>7 or 5 or 3 or 1&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

### SECTION 714

**COMPUTERIZED DRAINAGE DESIGN**

*Deleted.*

### SECTION 715

**BACKWATER VALVES**

715.1 Sewage backflow. Where plumbing fixtures are installed on a floor with a finished floor elevation below the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the public sewer, such fixtures shall be protected by a backwater valve installed in the building drain, or horizontal branch serving such fixtures. Plumbing fixtures installed on a floor with a finished floor elevation above the elevation of the
manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the public sewer shall not discharge through a backwater valve.

Exceptions:

1. In existing buildings, fixtures above the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the public sewer shall not be prohibited from discharging through a backwater valve.
2. Where the sewer service line ties directly to a manhole, that manhole is considered to be the next upstream manhole.
3. Where hub drains are located in the crawl space for condensate waste, a backwater valve or check valve shall be installed.

715.2 Material. Bearing parts of backwater valves shall be of corrosion-resistant material. Backwater valves shall comply with ASME A112.14.1, CSA B181.1 or CSA B181.2.

715.3 Seal. Backwater valves shall be so constructed as to provide a mechanical seal against backflow.

715.4 Diameter. Backwater valves, when fully opened, shall have a capacity not less than that of the pipes in which they are installed.

715.5 Location. Backwater valves shall be installed so that access is provided to the working parts for service and repair.

715.6 Crawl Spaces. All hub drains or floor drains installed in crawl spaces shall be protected from backflow into the building by a check valve or backwater valve installed in the lateral serving the said hub drain or floor drain. Trap seal protection shall be by the use of a deep seal trap.

716.2.4 Traps and cleanouts. Gravity drainage fixtures shall be provided with traps and cleanouts in accordance with this chapter and Chapter 10.

716.2.5 Materials. Vacuum drainage pipe, fitting and valve materials shall be in accordance with the vacuum drainage system manufacturer’s instructions and the requirements of this chapter.

716.3 Testing and demonstrations. After completion of the entire system installation, the system shall be subjected to a vacuum test of 19 inches (483 mm) of mercury and shall be operated to function as required by the code official and the manufacturer of the vacuum drainage system. Recorded proof of all tests shall be submitted to the code official.

716.4 Written instructions. Written instructions for the operation, maintenance, safety and emergency procedures shall be provided to the building owner. The code official shall verify that the building owner is in receipt of such instructions.

SECTION 717
REPLACEMENT OF UNDERGROUND SEWERS BY PIPE-BURSTING METHODS

717.1 General. This section shall govern the replacement of existing building sewer piping by pipe-bursting methods.

717.2 Applicability. The replacement of building sewer piping by pipe-bursting methods shall be limited to gravity drainage piping of sizes 6 inches (152 mm) and smaller. The replacement piping shall be of the same nominal size as the existing piping.

717.3 Pre-installation inspection. The existing piping sections to be replaced shall be inspected internally by a recorded video camera survey. The survey shall include notations of the position of cleanouts and the depth of connections to the existing piping.

717.4 Pipe. The replacement pipe shall be made of a high-density polyethylene (HDPE) that conforms to cell classification number PE3608, PE4608 or PE4710 as indicated in ASTM F714. The replacement piping shall be manufactured with a standard dimension ratio (SDR) of 17 and in compliance with ASTM F714.

717.5 Pipe fittings. Pipe fittings to be connected to the replacement piping shall be made of high-density polyethylene (HDPE) that conforms to cell classification number PE3608, PE4608 or PE4710 as indicated in ASTM F714 and shall be manufactured with an SDR of 17 and in compliance with ASTM D2683.

717.6 Cleanouts. Where the existing building sewer did not have cleanouts meeting the requirements of this code, cleanout fittings shall be installed as required by this code.

717.7 Post-installation inspection. The completed replacement piping section shall be inspected internally by a recorded video camera survey. The video survey shall be reviewed and approved by the code official prior to pressure testing of the replacement piping system.

717.8 Pressure testing. The replacement piping system shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.
CHAPTER 8
INDIRECT/SPECIAL WASTE

SECTION 801
GENERAL

801.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern matters concerning indirect waste piping and special wastes. This chapter shall further control matters concerning food-handling establishments, sterilizers, clear-water waste, swimming pools, methods of providing air breaks or air gaps, and neutralizing devices for corrosive wastes.

801.2 Protection. Devices, appurtenances, appliances and apparatus intended to serve some special function, such as sterilization, distillation, processing, cooling, or storage of ice or foods, and that discharge to the drainage system, shall be provided with protection against backflow, flooding, fouling, contamination and stoppage of the drain.

SECTION 802
INDIRECT WASTES

802.1 Where required. Food-handling equipment, in other than dwelling units, clear-water waste, dishwashing machines and utensils, pots, pans and dishwashing sinks shall discharge through an indirect waste pipe as specified in Sections 802.1.1 through 802.1.8. Health-care related fixtures, devices and equipment shall discharge to the drainage system through an indirect waste pipe by means of an air gap in accordance with this chapter and Section 713.3. Fixtures not required by this section to be indirectly connected shall be directly connected to the plumbing system in accordance with Chapter 7.

802.1.1 Food handling. Equipment and fixtures utilized for the storage, preparation and handling of food shall discharge through an indirect waste pipe by means of an air gap. Each well of a multiple-compartment sink shall discharge independently to a waste receptor.

802.1.2 Floor drains in food storage areas. Floor drains located within walk-in refrigerators or freezers in food service and food establishments shall be indirectly connected to the sanitary drainage system by means of an air gap. Where a floor drain is located within an area subject to freezing, the waste line serving the floor drain shall not be trapped and shall indirectly discharge into a waste receptor located outside of the area subject to freezing.

802.1.3 Potable clear-water waste. Where devices and equipment, such as sterilizers and relief valves, discharge potable water to the building drainage system, the discharge shall be through an indirect waste pipe by means of an air gap. Drinking fountains may be connected directly or indirectly.

802.1.4 Swimming pools. Where waste water from swimming pools, backwash from filters and water from pool deck drains discharge to the building drainage system, the discharge shall be through an indirect waste pipe by means of an air gap.

802.1.5 Nonpotable clear-water waste. Where devices and equipment such as process tanks, filters, condensate drains, drips and boilers discharge nonpotable water to the building drainage system, the discharge shall be through an indirect waste pipe by means of an air break or an air gap.

802.1.6 Domestic dishwashing machines. Domestic dishwashing machines shall discharge indirectly through an air gap or air break into a waste receptor in accordance with Section 802.2, or discharge into a wye branch fitting on the tailpiece of the kitchen sink or the dishwasher connection of a food waste disposer. The waste line of a domestic dishwashing machine discharging into a kitchen sink tailpiece or food waste disposer shall connect to a deck-mounted air gap or the waste line shall rise and be securely fastened to the underside of the sink rim or counter.

802.1.7 Commercial dishwashing machines. The discharge from a commercial dishwashing machine shall be through an air gap into a waste receptor in accordance with Section 802.2.1.

802.1.8 Food utensils, dishes, pots and pans sinks. Sinks, in other than dwelling units, used for the washing, rinsing or sanitizing of utensils, dishes, pots, pans or service ware used in the preparation, serving or eating of food shall discharge indirectly through an air gap or an air break to the drainage system.

802.2 Installation. Indirect waste piping shall discharge through an air gap or air break into a waste receptor. Waste receptors shall be trapped and vented and shall connect to the building drainage system. Indirect waste piping that exceeds 30 inches (762 mm) in developed length measured horizontally, or 54 inches (1372 mm) in total developed length, shall be trapped.

Exception: Where a waste receptor receives only clear-water waste and does not directly connect to a sanitary drainage system, the receptor shall not require a trap.

802.2.1 Air gap. The air gap between the indirect waste pipe and the flood level rim of the waste receptor shall be not less than twice the effective opening of the indirect waste pipe.

802.2.2 Air break. An air break shall be provided between the indirect waste pipe and the trap seal of the waste receptor.

802.3 Waste receptors. Every waste receptor shall be of an approved type. A removable strainer or basket shall cover the waste outlet of waste receptors. Waste receptors shall be installed in ventilated spaces. Waste receptors shall not be installed in concealed spaces. Waste receptors shall not be installed in plenums, crawl spaces, attics, interstitial spaces above ceilings and below floors. Ready access shall be provided to waste receptors.

Exception: Where hub drains are installed in a crawl space for condensate waste.
802.3.1 Size of receptors. A waste receptor shall be sized for the maximum discharge of all indirect waste pipes served by the receptor. Receptors shall be installed to prevent splashing or flooding.

802.3.2 Hub drains. A hub drain shall be in the form of a hub or a pipe extending not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above a water-impervious floor and shall not be required to have a strainer.

802.3.3 Standpipes. Standpipes shall be individually trapped. Access shall be provided to standpipes and drains for rodding. Standpipes shall be 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter and not less than 18 inches (762 mm) or more than 48 inches (1219 mm) in height as measured from the crown weir. The standpipe shall extend 34 inches (864 mm) minimum above the base of the clothes washer unless recommended otherwise by the manufacturer. The connection of a laundry tray waste line may be made into a standpipe for the automatic clothes-washer drain. The standpipe shall extend above the flood level rim of the laundry tray. The outlet of the laundry tray shall be a maximum horizontal distance of 30 inches (762 mm) from the standpipe trap.

803.1 Neutralizing device required for corrosive wastes. Corrosive liquids, spent acids or other harmful chemicals that destroy or injure a drain, sewer, soil or waste pipe, or create noxious or toxic fumes or interfere with sewage treatment processes shall not be discharged into the plumbing system without being thoroughly diluted, neutralized or treated by passing through an approved dilution or neutralizing device. Such devices shall be automatically provided with a sufficient supply of diluting water or neutralizing medium so as to make the contents noninjurious before discharge into the drainage system. The nature of the corrosive or harmful waste and the method of its treatment or dilution shall be approved prior to installation.

803.2 System design. Deleted.

803.3 Piscina drain. The drain from a wash basin (piscina) located in a sacristy may be connected directly to a dry well.

803.4 Acid soil and waste piping. For engineered acid soil and waste drainage systems, the type of pipe shall be selected by a registered design professional. For non-engineered acid soil and waste drainage systems, the piping shall be of a material that is designed and recommended by the manufacturer as suitable for the type of waste drained. Piping shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions. When installed within buildings, piping of combustible materials shall be of a flame-retardant type rated at least V-2 in accordance with UL 94. Concentrations of acid waste that are sufficient to adversely affect the conventional drainage system shall be suitably diluted or neutralized before interconnection. Fittings shall conform to the type of piping used.

803.5 Wastewater temperature. Steam pipes shall not connect to any part of a drainage or plumbing system and water above 140°F (60°C) shall not be discharged into any part of a drainage system. Such pipes shall discharge into an indirect waste receptor connected to the drainage system.

SECTION 803
SPECIAL WASTES

SECTION 804
MATERIALS, JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

804.1 General. The materials and methods utilized for the construction and installation of indirect waste pipes and systems shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 7.
CHAPTER 9
VENTS

SECTION 901
GENERAL

901.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of vent systems. This chapter shall control the minimum diameter of vent pipes, branch vents and individual vents, and the size and length of vents and various aspects of vent stacks and stack vents. Additionally, this chapter regulates vent grades and connections, height above fixtures and relief vents for stacks and fixture traps, and the venting of sumps and sewers.

901.2 Trap seal protection. The plumbing system shall be provided with a system of vent piping that will permit the admission or emission of air so that the seal of any fixture trap shall not be subjected to a pressure differential of more than 1 inch of water column (249 Pa).

901.2.1 Venting required. Traps and trapped fixtures shall be vented in accordance with one of the venting methods specified in this chapter. All fixtures discharging downstream from a water closet shall be individually vented except as provided in Section 911.

901.3 Chemical waste vent systems. The vent system for a chemical waste system shall be independent of the sanitary vent system and shall terminate separately through the roof to the open air or to an air admittance valve that complies with Section 312.

901.4 Use limitations. The plumbing vent system shall not be utilized for purposes other than the venting of the plumbing system.

901.5 Tests. The vent system shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

901.6 Engineered systems. Deleted.

SECTION 902
MATERIALS

902.1 Vents. The materials and methods utilized for the construction and installation of venting systems shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 702.

902.2 Sheet copper. Sheet copper for vent pipe flashings shall conform to ASTM B152 and shall weigh not less than 8 ounces per square foot (2.5 kg/m²).

902.3 Sheet lead. Sheet lead for vent pipe flashings shall weigh not less than 3 pounds per square foot (15 kg/m²) for field-constructed flashings and not less than 2 1/4 pounds per square foot (12 kg/m²) for prefabricated flashings.

SECTION 903
VENT TERMINALS

903.1 Roof extension. Open vent pipes that extend through a roof shall be terminated not less than [NUMBER] inches (mm) above the roof. Where a roof is to be used for assembly or as a promenade, observation deck, sunbathing deck or similar purposes, open vent pipes shall terminate not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the roof.

903.2 Frost closure. Deleted.

903.3 Flashings. The juncture of each vent pipe with the roof line shall be made water tight by an approved flashing. Vent extensions in walls and soffits shall be made weather tight by caulking.

903.4 Prohibited use. Vent terminals shall not be used as a flag pole or to support flag poles, television aerials or similar items, except when the piping has been anchored in an approved manner.

903.5 Location of vent terminal. An open vent terminal from a drainage system shall not be located directly beneath any door, openable window, or other air intake opening of the building or of an adjacent building or property line, and any such vent terminal shall not be within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of such an opening unless it is 2 feet (610 mm) or more above the top of such opening.

903.6 Extension through the wall. Vent terminals extending through the wall shall terminate at a point not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from a lot line and not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above average ground level. Vent terminals shall not terminate under the overhang of a structure with soffit vents. Side wall vent terminals shall be protected to prevent birds or rodents from entering or blocking the vent opening.

903.7 Extension outside a structure. Deleted.

SECTION 904
OUTDOOR VENT EXTENSIONS

904.1 Stack required. Every building in which plumbing is installed shall have at least one stack the size of which is not less than one-half of the required diameter of the building drain, and not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter. Such stack shall run undiminished in size and as directly as possible from the building drain through to the open air or to a vent header that extends to the open air.

904.1.1 Connection to drainage system. A vent stack shall connect to the building drain or to the base of a drainage stack in accordance with Section 903. A stack vent shall be an extension of the drainage stack. For townhouses and one- and two-family dwellings, the main vent shall connect to the building drain, building stack or branch thereof not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in size.
904.2 Vent stack required. A vent stack shall be required for every drainage stack that has five branch intervals or more.

Exception: Drainage stacks installed in accordance with Section 913.

904.3 Vent termination. Vent stacks or stack vents shall terminate outdoors to the open air or to a stack-type air admittance valve in accordance with Section 918.

904.4 Vent connection at base. Vent stacks shall connect to the base of the drainage stack. The vent stack shall connect at or below the lowest horizontal branch. Where the vent stack connects to the building drain, the connection shall be located downstream of the drainage stack and within a distance of 10 times the diameter of the drainage stack.

904.5 Vent headers. Stack vents and vent stacks connected into a common vent header at the top of the stacks and extending to the open air at one point shall be sized in accordance with the requirements of Section 906.1. The number of fixture units shall be the sum of all fixture units on all stacks connected thereto, and the developed length shall be the longest vent length from the intersection at the base of the most distant stack to the vent terminal in the open air, as a direct extension of one stack.

SECTION 905
VENT CONNECTIONS AND GRADES

905.1 Connection. Individual, branch and circuit vents shall connect to a vent stack, stack vent, air admittance valve or extend to the open air.

905.2 Grade. Vent and branch vent pipes shall be so graded and connected as to drain back to the drainage pipe by gravity.

905.3 Vent connection to drainage system. Every dry vent connecting to a horizontal drain shall connect above the centerline of the horizontal drain pipe.

905.4 Vertical rise of vent. Every dry vent shall rise vertically to a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest trap or trapped fixture being vented.

Exceptions:

1. Vents for interceptors located outdoors.

2. When vents for interceptors and isolated floor drains are not located near an adjacent wall, the vent must rise 6 inches (152 mm) vertically before turning horizontally and continuing to the nearest wall. For cleaning purposes, a cleanout the same size as the vent shall be installed.

905.5 Height above fixtures. A connection between a vent pipe and a vent stack or stack vent shall be made at not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest fixture served by the vent. Horizontal vent pipes forming branch vents, relief vents or loop vents shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest fixture served.

905.6 Vent for future fixtures. Where the drainage piping has been roughed-in for future fixtures, a rough-in connection for a vent shall be installed. The vent size shall be not less than one-half the diameter of the rough-in drain to be served. The vent rough-in shall connect to the vent system, or shall be vented by other means as provided for in this chapter. The connection shall be identified to indicate that it is a vent.

SECTION 906
VENT PIPE SIZING

906.1 Size of stack vents and vent stacks. The minimum required diameter of stack vents and vent stacks shall be determined from the developed length and the total of drainage fixture units connected thereto in accordance with Table 906.1, but in no case shall the diameter be less than one-half the diameter of the drain served or less than 1 1/4 inches (32 mm).

906.2 Vents other than stack vents or vent stacks. The diameter of individual vents, branch vents, circuit vents and relief vents shall be not less than one-half the required diameter of the drain served. The required size of the drain shall be determined in accordance with Table 906.2. Vent pipes shall not be less than 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) in diameter. Vents exceeding 40 feet (12 192 mm) in developed length shall be increased by one nominal pipe size for the entire developed length of the vent pipe. Relief vents for soil and waste stacks in buildings having more than 10 branch intervals shall be sized in accordance with Section 908.2.

906.3 Developed length. The developed length of individual, branch, circuit and relief vents shall be measured from the farthest point of vent connection to the drainage system to the point of connection to the vent stack, stack vent or termination outside of the building.

906.4 Multiple branch vents. Where multiple branch vents are connected to a common branch vent, the common branch vent shall be sized in accordance with this section based on the size of the common horizontal drainage branch that is or would be required to serve the total drainage fixture unit load being vented.

906.5 Sump vents. Sump vent sizes shall be determined in accordance with Sections 906.5.1 and 906.5.2.

906.5.1 Sewage pumps and sewage ejectors other than pneumatic. Drainage piping below sewer level shall be vented in the same manner as that of a gravity system. Building sump vent sizes for sumps with sewage pumps or sewage ejectors, other than pneumatic, shall be determined in accordance with Table 906.5.1. An open vent terminal from a drainage system shall not be located directly beneath any door, openable window, or other air intake opening of the building or of an adjacent building or property line, and any such vent terminal shall not be within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of such an opening unless it is at least 2 feet (610 mm) above the top of such opening.

906.5.2 Pneumatic sewage ejectors. The air pressure relief pipe from a pneumatic sewage ejector shall be connected to an independent vent stack terminating as required for vent extensions through the roof. The relief pipe shall be sized to relieve air pressure inside the ejector to atmospheric pressure, but shall be not less than one-fourth inches (32 mm) in size.
TABLE 906.1
SIZE AND DEVELOPED LENGTH OF STACK VENTS AND VENT STACKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIAMETER OF SOIL OR WASTE STACK (inches)</th>
<th>TOTAL FIXTURE UNITS BEING VENTED (dfu)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM DEVELOPED LENGTH OF VENT (feet)* DIA METER OF VENT (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1(\frac{3}{4})</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 2 3 4 5 6 8 10 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1(\frac{1}{2})</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>50 150 — — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1(\frac{3}{4})</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>30 100 — — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>30 50 150 — — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>30 50 150 — — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2(\frac{1}{2})</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>26 30 100 300 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>42 150 360 1,040 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>32 110 270 810 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>27 94 230 680 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>25 86 210 620 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>35 85 250 980 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>27 65 200 750 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>23 55 170 640 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>540</td>
<td>28 82 320 990 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>— — — — — — — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>490</td>
<td>21 63 250 760 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>940</td>
<td>18 53 210 670 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1,400</td>
<td>16 49 190 590 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>33 130 400 1,000 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1,100</td>
<td>26 100 310 780 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>22 84 260 660 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>2,900</td>
<td>20 77 240 600 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1,800</td>
<td>31 95 240 940 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>3,400</td>
<td>24 73 190 729 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>5,600</td>
<td>33 130 400 1,000 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>7,600</td>
<td>26 100 310 780 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>22 84 260 660 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>7,200</td>
<td>20 51 240 630 740 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>11,000</td>
<td>18 56 160 610 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>16 54 140 560 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>7,300</td>
<td>24 51 240 630 740 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>13,000</td>
<td>22 84 260 660 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>20 79 180 571 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>26,000</td>
<td>18 72 230 500 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>16 54 140 560 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>14 48 120 400 720 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>38,000</td>
<td>12 40 130 310 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>10 36 110 240 — — — — — —</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. The developed length shall be measured from the vent connection to the open air.
**TABLE 906.5.1**
SIZE AND LENGTH OF SUMP VENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DISCHARGE CAPACITY OF PUMP (gpm)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM DEVELOPED LENGTH OF VENT (feet)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>No limitb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>Not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>Not permitted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

a. Developed length plus an appropriate allowance for entrance losses and friction due to fittings, changes in direction and diameter. Suggested allowances shall be obtained from NBS Monograph 31 or other approved sources. An allowance of 50 percent of the developed length shall be assumed if a more precise value is not available.
b. Actual values greater than 500 feet.

**SECTION 907**
VENTS FOR STACK OFFSETS

907.1 Vent for horizontal offset of drainage stack. Horizontal offsets of drainage stacks shall be vented where five or more branch intervals are located above the offset. The offset shall be vented by venting the upper section of the drainage stack and the lower section of the drainage stack.

907.2 Upper section. The upper section of the drainage stack shall be vented as a separate stack with a vent stack connection installed in accordance with Section 904.4. The offset shall be considered the base of the stack.

907.3 Lower section. The lower section of the drainage stack shall be vented by a yoke vent connecting between the offset and the next lower horizontal branch. The yoke vent connection shall be permitted to be a vertical extension of the drainage stack. The size of the yoke vent and connection shall be a minimum of the size required for the vent stack of the drainage stack.

**SECTION 908**
RELIEF VENTS—STACKS OF MORE THAN 10 BRANCH INTERVALS

908.1 Where required. Soil and waste stacks in buildings having more than 10 branch intervals shall be provided with a relief vent at each tenth interval, beginning with the top floor.

908.2 Size and connection. The size of the relief vent shall be equal to the size of the vent stack to which it connects. The lower end of each relief vent shall connect to the soil or waste stack through a wye below the horizontal branch serving the floor, and the upper end shall connect to the vent stack through a wye not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the floor.

**SECTION 909**
FIXTURE VENTS

909.1 Distance of trap from vent. Each fixture trap shall have a protecting vent located so that the slope and the developed length in the fixture drain from the trap weir to the vent fitting are within the requirements set forth in Table 909.1.

**Exception:** The developed length of the fixture drain from the trap weir to the vent fitting for self-siphoning fixtures, such as water closets, shall not be limited.

**TABLE 909.1**
MAXIMUM DISTANCE OF FIXTURE TRAP FROM VENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIZE OF TRAP (inches)</th>
<th>SLOPE (inch per foot)</th>
<th>DISTANCE FROM TRAP (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11/4</td>
<td>11/4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11/2</td>
<td>11/4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>11/4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>11/4</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>11/4</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 inch per foot = 83.3 mm/m.

909.2 Venting of fixture drains. The total fall in a fixture drain due to pipe slope shall not exceed the diameter of the fixture drain, nor shall the vent connection to a fixture drain, except for water closets, be below the weir of the trap.

909.3 Crown vent prohibited. A vent shall not be installed within two pipe diameters of the trap weir.
SECTION 910
INDIVIDUAL VENT

910.1 Individual vent permitted. Each trap and trapped fixture is permitted to be provided with an individual vent. The individual vent shall connect to the fixture drain of the trap or trapped fixture being vented.

SECTION 911
COMMON VENT

911.1 Individual vent as common vent. An individual vent is permitted to vent two traps or trapped fixtures as a common vent. The traps or trapped fixtures being common vented shall be located on the same floor level.

911.2 Connection at the same level. Where the fixture drains being common vented connect at the same level, the vent connection shall be at the interconnection of the fixture drains.

911.3 Connection at different levels. Where the fixture drains connect at different levels, the vent shall connect as a vertical extension of the vertical drain. The vertical drain pipe connecting the two fixture drains shall be considered the vent for the lower fixture drain, and shall be sized in accordance with Table 911.3. The upper fixture shall not be a water closet or clothes washer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIPE SIZE (inches)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM DISCHARGE FROM UPPER FIXTURE DRAIN (dfu)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2 to 3</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

SECTION 912
WET VENTING

912.1 Horizontal wet vent permitted. Any combination of fixtures located on the same floor level is permitted to be vented by a wet vent. The wet vent shall be considered the vent for the fixtures and shall extend from the connection of the dry vent along the direction of the flow in the drain pipe to the most downstream fixture drain connection to the horizontal branch drain. Each wet-vented fixture drain shall connect independently to the horizontal wet vent. A residential clothes washer drain line shall not be used as a wet vent.

912.1.1 Vertical wet vent permitted. Any combination of fixtures located on the same floor level is permitted to be vented by a vertical wet vent. The vertical wet vent shall be considered the vent for the fixtures and shall extend from the connection of the dry vent down to the lowest fixture drain connection. Each wet-vented fixture shall connect independently to the vertical wet vent. Water closet drains shall connect at the same elevation. Other fixture drains shall connect above or at the same elevation as the water closet fixture drains. The dry-vent connection to the vertical wet vent shall be an individual or common vent serving one or two fixtures.

912.2 Dry vent connection. The required dry-vent connection for wet-vented systems shall comply with Sections 912.2.1 and 912.2.2.

912.2.1 Horizontal wet vent. The dry-vent connection for a horizontal wet-vent system shall be an individual vent or a common vent for any fixture, except an emergency floor drain. Where the dry-vent connects to a water closet fixture drain, the drain shall connect horizontally to the horizontal wet-vent system.

912.2.2 Vertical wet vent. The dry-vent connection for a vertical wet-vent system shall be an individual vent or common vent for the most upstream fixture drain.

912.3 Size. The dry vent serving the wet vent shall be sized based on the largest required diameter of pipe within the wet-vent system served by the dry vent. The wet vent shall be of a size not less than that specified in Table 912.3, based on the fixture unit discharge to the wet vent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 912.3 WET VENT SIZE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WET VENT PIPE SIZE (inches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

SECTION 913
WASTE STACK VENT

913.1 Waste stack vent permitted. A waste stack shall be considered a vent for all of the fixtures discharging to the stack where installed in accordance with the requirements of this section.

913.2 Stack installation. The waste stack shall be vertical, and both horizontal and vertical offsets shall be prohibited between the lowest fixture drain connection and the highest fixture drain connection. Fixture drains shall connect separately to the waste stack. The stack shall not receive the discharge of water closets or urinals.

913.3 Stack vent. A stack vent shall be provided for the waste stack. The size of the stack vent shall be not less than the size of the waste stack. Offsets shall be permitted in the stack vent, shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level of the highest fixture and shall be in accordance with Section 905.2. The stack vent shall be permitted to connect with other stack vents and vent stacks in accordance with Section 904.5.

913.4 Waste stack size. The waste stack shall be sized based on the total discharge to the stack and the discharge within a branch interval in accordance with Table 913.4. The waste stack shall be the same size throughout its length.
TABLE 913.4
WASTE STACK VENT SIZE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STACK SIZE (inches)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM NUMBER OF DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS (du)</th>
<th>Total discharge into one branch interval</th>
<th>Total discharge for stack</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td></td>
<td>No limit</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>No limit</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>No limit</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>No limit</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>No limit</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

SECTION 914
CIRCUIT VENTING

914.1 Circuit vent permitted. A maximum of eight fixtures connected to a horizontal branch drain shall be permitted to be circuit vented. Each fixture drain shall connect horizontally to the horizontal branch being circuit vented. The horizontal branch drain shall be classified as a vent from the most downstream fixture drain connection to the most upstream fixture drain connection to the horizontal branch.

914.1.1 Multiple circuit-vented branches. Circuit-vented horizontal branch drains are permitted to be connected together. Each group of a maximum of eight fixtures shall be considered a separate circuit vent and shall conform to the requirements of this section.

914.2 Vent connection. The circuit vent connection shall be located between the two most upstream fixture drains. The vent shall connect to the horizontal branch and shall be installed in accordance with Section 905. The circuit vent pipe shall not receive the discharge of any soil or waste.

914.3 Slope and size of horizontal branch. The slope of the vent section of the horizontal branch drain shall be not greater than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.3-per cent slope). The entire length of the vent section of the horizontal branch drain shall be sized for the total drainage discharge to the branch. Drainage discharge du values for horizontal fixture branches shall be reduced 50 percent in Table 910.1(2) for circuit-vented fixture branches.

914.3.1 Size of multiple circuit vent. Each separate circuit-vented horizontal branch that is interconnected shall be sized independently in accordance with Section 914.3. The downstream circuit-vented horizontal branch shall be sized for the total discharge into the branch, including the upstream branches and the fixtures within the branch.

914.4 Relief vent. A relief vent shall be provided for circuit-vented horizontal branches receiving the discharge of four or more water closets and connecting to a drainage stack that receives the discharge of soil or waste from upper horizontal branches.

914.4.1 Connection and installation. The relief vent shall connect to the horizontal branch drain between the stack and the most downstream fixture drain of the circuit vent.

The relief vent shall be installed in accordance with Section 905.

914.4.2 Fixture drain or branch. The relief vent is permitted to be a fixture drain or fixture branch for fixtures located within the same branch interval as the circuit-vented horizontal branch. The maximum discharge to a relief vent shall be four fixture units.

914.5 Additional fixtures. Fixtures, other than the circuit-vented fixtures, are permitted to discharge to the horizontal branch drain. Such fixtures shall be located on the same floor as the circuit-vented fixtures and shall be either individually or common vented.

SECTION 915
COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEM

915.1 Approval. Plans and specifications for each combination waste and vent system shall be submitted to the plumbing official, and approval shall be obtained before any installation is started.

915.2 Limits.

915.2.1 A combination waste and vent system is limited to sinks, dishwashers, floor sinks, indirect waste receptors, floor drains or similar applications where the fixtures are not adjacent to walls or partitions. It consists of the installation of waste piping in which the trap of the fixture is not individually vented.

915.2.2 Appurtenances delivering large quantities of water or sewage (such as pumps) shall be excluded in a combination waste and vent system to ensure that adequate venting will be maintained.

915.2.3 Connection. Deleted.

915.2.4 Vent size. The vent shall be sized for the total drainage fixture unit load in accordance with Section 906.2.

915.2.5 Fixture branch or drain. The fixture branch or fixture drain shall connect to the combination waste and vent within a distance specified in Table 909.1. The combination waste and vent pipe shall be considered the vent for the fixture.

915.3 Dishwashers. Dishwashers and scullery sinks in commercial buildings shall drain through a grease interceptor sized in accordance with this code, and they shall discharge into a floor sink through a minimum air gap.

915.4 General design.

915.4.1 Every waste pipe and trap in this system shall be at least two pipe sizes larger than the size required in Chapter 7, and at least two pipe sizes larger than any fixture tailpiece or connection, except that when P traps are installed above the floor, the P trap and horizontal fixture drain need not meet this requirement. The vertical waste pipe two sizes larger than the fixture outlet connection shall be extended above the floor to normal roughing height, and a cleanout shall be installed in top of the connecting waste tee. The fixture drain length shall be limited by Table 906.1. Floor sinks shall be connected through a running trap two pipe...
sizes larger than the sink outlet. Floor sink and waste piping from the floor sink to the trap shall be sized for the total fixture units draining thereto, based on Table 709.1, but in no case shall the line be less than 2-inch (51 mm) soil pipe when piping is underground.

915.4.2 A vent shall be provided at the upstream end of each branch, washed over or under by the last fixture on the branch. No vent shall take off from the horizontal waste branch at an angle of less than 45 degrees (0.785 rad) from the horizontal unless washed by a fixture. A minimum size vent shall be located at all points where branches intersect. A vent shall be located downstream from all fixtures in the system, in addition to the upstream vent, separating this system from all other systems in the building. No fixtures other than those permitted in Section 915.2 shall discharge into any branch or portion of this system.

915.4.3 The design of the system shall ensure that the vertical distance from fixture or drain outlet to trap weir does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm). Long runs shall be provided with additional relief vents located at intervals of not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) to equalize pressure in the system.

915.5 Size of vents. The size of vents shall be in accordance with requirements of Section 906.1 and Table 906.1, but the diameter shall be not less than one-half of the diameter of the waste pipe served.

915.6 Receptor drain size. Indirect waste receptors shall be sized for the fixture units draining thereto, regardless of other requirements of this code.

SECTION 916 ISLAND FIXTURE VENTING

916.1 Limitation. Island fixture venting shall not be permitted for fixtures other than sinks and lavatories. Residential kitchen sinks with a dishwasher waste connection, a food waste disposer, or both, in combination with the kitchen sink waste, shall be permitted to be vented in accordance with this section.

916.2 Vent connection. The island fixture vent shall connect to the fixture drain as required for an individual or common vent. The vent shall rise vertically to above the drainage outlet of the fixture being vented before offsetting horizontally or vertically downward. The vent or branch vent for multiple island fixture vents shall extend to a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the highest island fixture being vented before connecting to the outside vent terminal.

916.3 Vent installation below the fixture flood level rim. The vent located below the flood level rim of the fixture being vented shall be installed as required for drainage piping in accordance with Chapter 7, except for sizing. The vent shall be sized in accordance with Section 906.2. The lowest point of the island fixture vent shall connect full size to the drainage system. The connection shall be to a vertical drain pipe or to the top half of a horizontal drain pipe. Cleanouts shall be provided in the island fixture vent to permit rodding of all vent piping located below the flood level rim of the fixtures. Rodding in both directions shall be permitted through a cleanout.

SECTION 917 SINGLE STACK VENT SYSTEM (S Owen) 

917.1 Design and installation shall be in accordance with the design criteria contained in the Copper Development Association (CDA) Handbook No. 802. Materials shall meet standards and specifications listed in Tables 702.1 and 702.4 for drain, waste and vent pipe and fittings.

SECTION 918 AIR ADMITTANCE VALVES

918.1 General. Vent systems utilizing air admittance valves shall comply with this section. Stack-type air admittance valves shall conform to ASSE 1050. Individual and branch-type air admittance valves shall conform to ASSE 1051.

918.2 Installation. The valves shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this section and the manufacturer’s instructions. Air admittance valves shall be installed after the DWV testing required by Section 312.2 or 312.3 has been performed.

918.3 Where permitted. Individual, branch and circuit vents shall be permitted to terminate with a connection to an individual or branch-type air admittance valve in accordance with Section 918.3.1. Stack vents and vent stacks shall be permitted to terminate to stack-type air admittance valves in accordance with Section 918.3.2.

918.3.1 Horizontal branches. Individual and branch-type air admittance valves shall vent only fixtures that are on the same floor level and connect to a horizontal branch drain. Where the horizontal branch is located more than four branch intervals from the top of the stack, the horizontal branch shall be provided with a relief vent that shall connect to a vent stack or stack vent, or extend outdoors to the open air. The relief vent shall connect to the horizontal branch drain between the stack and the most downstream fixture drain connected to the horizontal branch drain. The relief vent shall be sized in accordance with Section 906.2 and installed in accordance with Section 905. The relief vent shall be permitted to serve as the vent for other fixtures.

918.3.2 Stack. Stack-type air admittance valves shall be prohibited from serving as the vent terminal for vent stacks or stack vents that serve drainage stacks having more than six branch intervals.

918.4 Location. Individual and branch-type air admittance valves shall be located a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) above the horizontal branch drain or fixture drain being vented. Stack-type air admittance valves shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the highest fixture being vented. The air admittance valve shall be located within the maximum developed length permitted for the vent. The air admittance valve shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above insulation materials.

918.5 Access and ventilation. Access shall be provided to all air admittance valves. Such valves shall be installed in a location that allows air to enter the valve.
918.6 Size. The air admittance valve shall be rated in accordance with the standard for the size of the vent to which the valve is connected.

918.7 Vent required. Within each plumbing system, not less than one stack vent or vent stack shall extend outdoors to the open air.

918.8 Prohibited installations. Air admittance valves shall not be installed in nonneutralized special waste systems as described in Chapter 8 except where such valves are in compliance with ASSE 1049, are constructed of materials approved in accordance with Section 702.5 and are tested for chemical resistance in accordance with ASTM F1412. Air admittance valves shall not be located in spaces utilized as supply or return air plenums. Air admittance valves without an engineered design shall not be utilized to vent sumps or tanks of any type.

SECTION 919
ENGINEERED VENT SYSTEMS
Deleted.

SECTION 920
COMPUTERIZED VENT DESIGN
Deleted.
CHAPTER 10
TRAPS, INTERCEPTORS AND SEPARATORS

SECTION 1001
GENERAL

1001.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the material and installation of traps, interceptors and separators.

SECTION 1002
TRAP REQUIREMENTS

1002.1 Fixture traps. Each plumbing fixture shall be separately trapped by a liquid-seal trap, except as otherwise permitted by this code. The vertical distance from the fixture outlet to the trap weir shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm), and the horizontal distance shall not exceed 30 inches (610 mm) measured from the centerline of the fixture outlet to the centerline of the inlet of the trap. The height of a clothes washer standpipe above a trap shall conform to Section 802.3.3. A fixture shall not be double trapped.

Exceptions:
1. This section shall not apply to fixtures with integral traps.
2. A combination plumbing fixture or up to three similar fixtures shall be permitted to be installed on one trap, provided that one compartment is not more than 6 inches (152 mm) deeper than the other compartment and the waste outlets are not more than 30 inches (762 mm) apart.
3. A grease interceptor intended to serve as a fixture trap in accordance with the manufacturer’s installation instructions shall be permitted to serve as the trap for a single fixture or a combination sink of not more than three compartments where the vertical distance from the fixture outlet to the inlet of the interceptor does not exceed 30 inches (762 mm) and the developed length of the waste pipe from the most upstream fixture outlet to the inlet of the interceptor does not exceed 60 inches (1524 mm).
4. The connection of a laundry tray complying with Section 802.3.3.

1002.2 Design of traps. Fixture traps shall be self-scouring. Fixture traps shall not have interior partitions, except where such traps are integral with the fixture or where such traps are constructed of an approved material that is resistant to corrosion and degradation. Slip joints shall be made with an approved elastomeric gasket and shall be installed only on the trap inlet, trap outlet and within the trap seal.

1002.3 Prohibited traps. The following types of traps are prohibited:
1. Traps that depend on moving parts to maintain the seal.
2. Bell traps.
4. Traps not integral with a fixture and that depend on interior partitions for the seal, except those traps constructed of an approved material that is resistant to corrosion and degradation.
5. “S” traps.
6. Drum traps.

Exception: Drum traps used as solids interceptors and drum traps serving chemical waste systems shall not be prohibited.

1002.4 Trap seals. Each fixture trap shall have a liquid seal of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and not more than 4 inches (102 mm), or deeper for special designs relating to accessible fixtures.

1002.4.1 Trap seal protection. Trap seals of emergency floor drain traps and trap seals subject to evaporation shall be protected by one of the methods in Sections 1002.4.1.1 through 1002.4.1.4.

1002.4.1.1 Potable water-supplied trap seal primer valve. A potable water-supplied trap seal primer valve shall supply water to the trap. Water-supplied trap seal primer valves shall conform to ASSE 1018. The discharge pipe from the trap seal primer valve shall connect to the trap above the trap seal on the inlet side of the trap.

1002.4.1.2 Reclaimed or gray water-supplied trap seal primer valve. A reclaimed or gray water-supplied trap seal primer valve shall supply water to the trap. Water-supplied trap seal primer valves shall conform to ASSE 1018. The quality of reclaimed or gray water supplied to trap seal primer valves shall be in accordance with the requirements of the manufacturer of the trap seal primer valve. The discharge pipe from the trap seal primer valve shall connect to the trap above the trap seal on the inlet side of the trap.

1002.4.1.3 Waste water-supplied trap seal primer device. A waste water-supplied trap seal primer device shall supply water to the trap. Waste water-supplied trap primer devices shall conform to ASSE 1044. The discharge pipe from the trap seal primer device shall connect to the trap above the trap seal on the inlet side of the trap.

1002.5 Size of fixture traps. Fixture trap size shall be sufficient to drain the fixture rapidly and not less than the size indicated in Table 709.1. A trap shall not be larger than the drainage pipe into which the trap discharges.

1002.6 Building traps. Building (house) traps shall be prohibited.

1002.7 Trap setting and protection. Traps shall be set level with respect to the trap seal and, where necessary, shall be protected from freezing.
SECTION 1003
INTERCEPTORS AND SEPARATORS

1003.1 Where required. Interceptors and separators shall be provided to prevent the discharge of oil, grease, sand and other substances harmful or hazardous to the public sewer, the private sewage system or the sewage treatment plant or processes.

1003.2 Approval. The size, type and location of each interceptor and of each separator shall be designed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions, the local utility or health department requirements and the requirements of this section based on the anticipated conditions of use. Wastes that do not require treatment or separation shall not be discharged into any interceptor or separator.

1003.3 Grease interceptors. Grease interceptors shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1003.3.1 through 1003.3.5 and the local utility or health department requirements.

1003.3.1 Grease interceptors and automatic grease removal devices required. A grease interceptor or automatic grease removal device shall be required to receive the drainage from fixtures and equipment with grease-laden waste located in food preparation areas, such as in restaurants, hotel kitchens, hospitals, school kitchens, bars, factory cafeterias and clubs. Fixtures and equipment shall include pot sinks, prerinse sinks; soup kettles or similar devices; wok stations; floor drains or sinks into which kettles are drained; automatic hood wash units and dishwashers without prerinse sinks. Grease interceptors and automatic grease removal devices shall receive waste only from fixtures and equipment that allow fats, oils or grease to be discharged. Where lack of space or other constraints prevent the installation or replacement of a grease interceptor, one or more grease interceptors may be permitted to be installed on or above the floor and upstream of an existing grease interceptor.

1003.3.2 Food waste disposers. Where food waste disposers connect to grease interceptors, a solids interceptor shall separate the discharge before connecting to the grease interceptor. Solids interceptors and grease interceptors shall be sized and rated for the discharge of the food waste disposers. Emulsifiers, chemicals, enzymes and bacteria shall not discharge into the food waste disposer.

1003.3.3 Grease interceptors and automatic grease removal devices not required. A grease interceptor or an automatic grease removal device shall not be required for individual dwelling units or any private living quarters.

1003.3.4 Hydromechanical grease interceptors, fats, oils and grease disposal systems and automatic grease removal devices. Hydromechanical grease interceptors; fats, oils, and grease disposal systems and automatic grease removal devices shall be sized in accordance with ASME A112.14.3, ASME A112.14.4, CSA B481.3 or PDI G101. Hydromechanical grease interceptors; fats, oils, and grease disposal systems and automatic grease removal devices shall be designed and tested in accordance with ASME A112.14.3, ASME A112.14.4, CSA B481.1, PDI G101 or PDI G102. Hydromechanical grease interceptors; fats, oils, and grease disposal systems and automatic grease removal devices shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

1003.3.4.1 Grease interceptor capacity. Grease interceptors shall have the grease retention capacity indicated in Table 1003.3.4.1 for the flow-through rates indicated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 1003.3.4.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CAPACITY OF GREASE INTERCEPTORS</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL FLOW-THROUGH</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RATING (gpm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 pound = 0.454 kg. a. For total flow-through ratings greater than 100 (gpm), double the flow-through rating to determine the grease retention capacity (pounds).

1003.3.4.2 Rate of flow controls. Grease interceptors shall be equipped with devices to control the rate of water flow so that the water flow does not exceed the rated flow. The flow-control device shall be vented and terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood rim level or be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

1003.3.5 Automatic grease removal devices. Where automatic grease removal devices are installed, such devices shall be located downstream of each fixture or multiple fixtures in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. The automatic grease removal device shall be sized to pretreat the measured or calculated flows for all connected fixtures or equipment. Ready access shall be provided for inspection and maintenance.

1003.3.6 Gravity grease interceptors and gravity grease interceptors with fats, oils, and grease disposal systems. The required capacity of gravity grease interceptors and gravity grease interceptors with fats, oils, and grease disposal systems shall be determined by multiplying the peak drain flow into the interceptor in gallons per minute by a
retention time of 30 minutes. Gravity grease interceptors shall be designed and tested in accordance with IAPMO/ANSI Z1001. Gravity grease interceptors with fats, oils, and greases disposal systems shall be designed and tested in accordance with ASME A112.14.6 and IAPMO/ANSI Z1001. Gravity grease interceptors and gravity grease interceptors with fats, oils, and greases disposal systems shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions. Where manufacturer’s instructions are not provided, gravity grease interceptors and gravity grease interceptors with fats, oils, and greases disposal systems shall be installed in compliance with ASME A112.14.6 and IAPMO/ANSI Z1001.

1003.3.7 Direct connection. The discharge piping from a grease interceptor shall be directly connected to the sanitary drainage system.

1003.4 Oil separators required. At repair garages where floor or trench drains are provided, car washing facilities, factories where oily and flammable liquid wastes are produced and oil separators shall be installed into which oil-bearing, grease-bearing or flammable wastes shall be discharged before emptying into the building drainage system or other point of disposal.

Exception: An oil separator is not required in hydraulic elevator sump pits where an approved alarm system is installed. Elevator sump pits with oil mender pumps shall discharge the oil into a temporary storage tank. Such alarm systems shall not terminate the operation of pumps utilized to maintain emergency operation of the elevator by fire fighters.

1003.4.1 Separation of liquids. A mixture of treated or untreated light and heavy liquids with various specific gravities shall be separated in an approved receptacle.

1003.4.2 Oil separator design. Oil separators shall be listed and labeled, or designed in accordance with Sections 1003.4.2.1 and 1003.4.2.2.

1003.4.2.1 General design requirements. Oil separators shall have a depth of not less than 2 feet (610 mm) below the invert of the discharge drain. The outlet opening of the separator shall not have less than an 18-inch (457 mm) water seal.

1003.4.2.2 Garages and service stations. Where automobiles are serviced, greased, repaired or washed or where gasoline is dispensed, oil separators shall have a capacity of not less than 6 cubic feet (0.168 m³) for the first 100 square feet (9.3 m²) of area to be drained, plus 1 cubic foot (0.028 m³) for each additional 100 square feet (9.3 m²) of area to be drained into the separator. Parking garages in which servicing, repairing or washing is not conducted, and in which gasoline is not dispensed, shall not require a separator. Areas of commercial garages utilized only for storage of automobiles are not required to be drained through a separator.

1003.5 Sand interceptors in commercial establishments. Sand and similar interceptors for heavy solids shall be designed and located so as to be provided with ready access for cleaning, and shall have a water seal of not less than 6 inches (152 mm).

1003.6 Clothes washer discharge interceptor. Clothes washers shall discharge through an interceptor that is provided with a wire basket or similar device, removable for cleaning, that prevents passage into the drainage system of solids 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) or larger in size, string, rags, buttons or other materials detrimental to the public sewage system.

Exceptions:

1. Clothes washers in individual dwelling units shall not be required to discharge through an interceptor.
2. A single clothes washer designed for use in individual dwelling units and installed in a location other than an individual dwelling unit shall not be required to discharge through an interceptor.

1003.7 Bottling establishments. Bottling plants shall discharge process wastes into an interceptor that will provide for the separation of broken glass or other solids before discharging waste into the drainage system.

1003.8 Slaughterhouses. Slaughtering room and dressing room drains shall be equipped with approved separators. The separator shall prevent the discharge into the drainage system of feathers, entrails and other materials that cause clogging.

1003.9 Venting of interceptors and separators. Interceptors and separators shall be designed so as not to become air bound. Interceptors and separators shall be vented in accordance with one of the methods in Chapter 9.

1003.10 Access and maintenance of interceptors and separators. Access shall be provided to each interceptor and separator for service and maintenance. Interceptors and separators shall be maintained by periodic removal of accumulated grease, scum, oil, or other floating substances and solids deposited in the interceptor or separator.

SECTION 1004 MATERIALS, JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

1004.1 General. The materials and methods utilized for the construction and installation of traps, interceptors and separators shall comply with this chapter and the applicable provisions of Chapters 4 and 7. The fittings shall not have ledges, shoulders or reductions capable of retarding or obstructing flow of the piping.
CHAPTER 11
STORM DRAINAGE

SECTION 1101
GENERAL

1101.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of storm drainage except one- and two-family dwellings.

1101.2 Disposal. Rainwater from roofs and storm water from paved areas, yards, courts and courtyards shall drain to an approved place of disposal.

1101.3 Prohibited drainage. Storm water shall not be drained into sewers intended for sewage only.

1101.4 Tests. The conductors and the building storm drain shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

1101.5 Change in size. The size of a drainage pipe shall not be reduced in the direction of flow.

1101.6 Fittings and connections. All connections and changes in direction of the storm drainage system shall be made with approved drainage-type fittings in accordance with Table 706.3. The fittings shall not obstruct or retard flow in the system.

1101.7 Roof design. Roofs shall be designed for the maximum possible depth of water that will pond thereon as determined by the relative levels of roof deck and overflow weirs, scuppers, edges or serviceable drains in combination with the deflected structural elements. In determining the maximum possible depth of water, all primary roof drainage means shall be assumed to be blocked. The maximum possible depth of water on the roof shall include the height of the water required above the inlet of the secondary roof drainage means to achieve the required flow rate of the secondary drainage means to accommodate the design rainfall rate as required by Section 1106.

1101.8 Cleanouts required. Cleanouts shall be installed in the storm drainage system and shall comply with the provisions of this code for sanitary drainage pipe cleanouts.

Exception: Subsurface drainage system.

1101.9 Backwater valves. Storm drainage systems shall be provided with backwater valves as required for sanitary drainage systems in accordance with Section 715.

SECTION 1102
MATERIALS

1102.1 General. The materials and methods utilized for the construction and installation of storm drainage systems shall comply with this section and the applicable provisions of Chapter 7.

1102.2 Inside storm drainage conductors. Inside storm drainage conductors installed above ground shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 702.1.

Exception: Plastic pipe with an inside diameter of 2 inches and larger shall not be used for storm drainage con-

ductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23 m) in height.

1102.3 Underground building storm drain pipe. Underground building storm drain pipe shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 702.2.

1102.4 Building storm sewer pipe. Building storm sewer pipe shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 1102.4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1102.4 BUILDING STORM SEWER PIPE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATERIAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-iron pipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete pipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, L, M or DWV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe (Type DWV, SDR26, SDR35, SDR41, PS50 or PS100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitrified clay pipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 316L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1102.5 Subsoil drain pipe. Subsoil drains shall be open-jointed, horizontally split or perforated pipe conforming to one of the standards listed in Table 1102.5.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1102.5 SUBSOIL DRAIN PIPE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATERIAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-iron pipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) Plastic pipe (type sewer pipe, SDR35, PS25, PS50 or PS100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 316L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitrified clay pipe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1102.6 Roof drains. Roof drains shall conform to ASME A112.6.4 or ASME A112.3.1.

1102.7 Fittings. Pipe fittings shall be approved for installation with the piping material installed, and shall conform to the respective pipe standards or one of the standards listed in Table 1102.7. The fittings shall not have ledges, shoulders or reductions capable of retarding or obstructing flow in the piping. Threaded drainage pipe fittings shall be of the recessed drainage type.

Exception: Plastic pipe fittings and plastic plumbing appurtenances with an inside diameter of 2 inches and larger shall not be used for storm drainage conductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23 m) in height.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 1102.7 PIPE FITTING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATERIAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast-iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coextruded composite ABS and drain DR-PS in PS35, PS50, PS100, PS140, PS200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coextruded composite ABS DWV Schedule 40 IPS pipe (solid or cellular core)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coextruded composite PVC DWV Schedule 40 IPS-DR, PS140, PS200 (solid or cellular core)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coextruded composite PVC sewer and drain DR-PS in PS35, PS50, PS100, PS140, PS200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper or copper alloy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray iron and ductile iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malleable iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastic, general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 316L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECTION 1103 TRAPS

Deleted.

SECTION 1104 CONDUCTORS AND CONNECTIONS

1104.1 Prohibited use. Conductor pipes shall not be used as soil, waste or vent pipes, and soil, waste or vent pipes shall not be used as conductors.

1104.2 Floor drains. Floor drains shall not be connected to a storm drain.

SECTION 1105 ROOF DRAINS

1105.1 General. Roof drains shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. The inside opening for the roof drain shall not be obstructed by the roofing membrane material.

1105.1.1 Strainers. Roof drains shall have strainers extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above the surface of the roof immediately adjacent to the roof drain. Strainers shall have an available inlet area, above roof level, of not less than one and one-half times the area of the conductor or leader to which the drain is connected.

1105.1.2 Flat decks. Roof drain strainers for use on sun decks, parking decks and similar areas that are normally serviced and maintained shall comply with Section 1105.1 or shall be of the flat-surface type, installed level with the deck, with an available inlet area not less than two times the area of the conductor or leader to which the drain is connected.

1105.1.3 Roof drain flashings. The connection between roofs and roof drains that pass through the roof and into the interior of the building shall be made water-tight by the use of approved flashing material.

1105.2 Roof drain flow rate. The published roof drain flow rate, based on the head of water above the roof drain, shall be used to size the storm drainage system in accordance with Section 1106. The flow rate used for sizing the storm drainage piping shall be based on the maximum anticipated ponding at the roof drain.

SECTION 1106 SIZE OF CONDUCTORS, LEADERS AND STORM DRAINS

1106.1 General. The size of the vertical conductors and leaders, building storm drains, building storm sewers and any horizontal branches of such drains or sewers shall be based on the 100-year hourly rainfall rate indicated in Figures 1106.1(a) and 1106.1(b) or on other rainfall rates determined from approved local weather data.
FIGURE 1106.1(a)

**100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES/HOUR) NORTH CAROLINA FOR PRIMARY ROOF DRAINS**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 1106.1(b)

**100-YEAR, 15-MINUTE RAINFALL (INCHES/HOUR) NORTH CAROLINA FOR SECONDARY ROOF DRAINS**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
1106.2 Vertical conductors and leaders. Vertical conductors and leaders shall be sized for the maximum projected roof area, in accordance with Tables 1106.2(1) and 1106.2(2).

1106.3 Building storm drains and sewers. The size of the building storm drain, building storm sewer and their horizontal branches having a slope of one-half unit or less vertical in 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope) shall be based on the maximum projected roof area in accordance with Table 1106.5. The minimum slope of horizontal branches shall be one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope) unless otherwise approved.

1106.4 Vertical walls. In sizing roof drains and storm drainage piping, one-half of the area of any vertical wall or parapet that diverts rainwater to the roof shall be added to the projected roof area for inclusion in calculating the required size of vertical conductors, leaders and horizontal storm drainage piping.

1106.5 Parapet wall scupper location. Parapet wall roof drainage scupper and overflow scupper location shall comply with the requirements of Figure 1106.5.

(Note: 1 gpm = 0.0104 × (rainfall rate) × area)

1106.6 Size of roof gutters. The size of semicircular gutters shall be based on the maximum projected roof area in accordance with Table 1106.6.

### TABLE 1106.2(1)

#### SIZE OF CIRCULAR CONDUCTORS AND LEADERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIAMETER OF LEADER (inches)</th>
<th>HORIZONTALLY PROJECTED ROOF AREA (square feet)</th>
<th>Rainfall rate (inches per hour)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>19.0</td>
<td>22.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>46.0</td>
<td>52.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI, 1 inch = 25.4 mm. 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

a. Sizes indicated are the diameter of circular piping. This table is applicable to piping of other shapes, provided the cross-sectional shape fully encloses a circle of the diameter indicated in this table. For rectangular leaders, see Table 1106.2(2). Interpolation is permitted for pipe sizes that fall between those listed in this table.

### TABLE 1106.2(2)

#### SIZE OF RECTANGULAR VERTICAL CONDUCTORS AND LEADERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIMENSIONS OF COMMON LEADER SIZES WITH x LENGTH (inches)</th>
<th>HORIZONTALLY PROJECTED ROOF AREA (square feet)</th>
<th>Rainfall rate (inches per hour)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/4 x 2 1/4</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 x 3</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/4 x 4 1/4</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>13.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 x 4</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>14.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1/2 x 4 1/2</td>
<td>15.9</td>
<td>17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 x 5</td>
<td>21.3</td>
<td>22.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 1/2 x 5 1/2</td>
<td>21.9</td>
<td>23.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 x 6</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>27.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 1/2 x 6 1/2</td>
<td>27.8</td>
<td>29.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 x 6</td>
<td>32.9</td>
<td>34.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 x 6 1/2</td>
<td>44.3</td>
<td>45.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 x 7 1/2</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Sizes indicated are nominal width x length of the opening for rectangular piping.

b. For shapes not included in this table, Equation 11-1 shall be used to determine the equivalent circular diameter, \( D_c \), of rectangular piping for use in interpolation using the data from Table 1106.2(1).

\[ D_c = \sqrt{\frac{b \times h}{2}} \] (Equation 11-1)

Where:

- \( D_c \): equivalent circular diameter
- \( b \): width
- \( h \): length
### TABLE 1106.3
SIZE OF HORIZONTAL STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIZE OF HORIZONTAL PIPING (inches)</th>
<th>HORIZONTALLY PROJECTED ROOF AREA (square feet)</th>
<th>Rainfall rate (inches per hour)</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>----</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.228</td>
<td>1.644</td>
<td>1.096</td>
<td>822</td>
<td>657</td>
<td>548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7.520</td>
<td>3.760</td>
<td>2.506</td>
<td>1.800</td>
<td>1.504</td>
<td>1.253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>21.400</td>
<td>10.700</td>
<td>7.133</td>
<td>5.350</td>
<td>4.280</td>
<td>3.566</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>46.000</td>
<td>23.000</td>
<td>15.500</td>
<td>11.500</td>
<td>9.200</td>
<td>7.600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>82.800</td>
<td>41.400</td>
<td>27.600</td>
<td>20.700</td>
<td>16.580</td>
<td>13.800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>133.200</td>
<td>6.600</td>
<td>44.400</td>
<td>33.300</td>
<td>26.650</td>
<td>22.200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>218.000</td>
<td>109.000</td>
<td>72.800</td>
<td>59.500</td>
<td>47.600</td>
<td>39.650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4,640</td>
<td>2,300</td>
<td>1,546</td>
<td>1,160</td>
<td>928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10,600</td>
<td>5,300</td>
<td>3,533</td>
<td>2,650</td>
<td>2,120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>18,880</td>
<td>9,440</td>
<td>6,293</td>
<td>4,720</td>
<td>3,776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30,200</td>
<td>15,100</td>
<td>10,066</td>
<td>7,550</td>
<td>6,040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>65,200</td>
<td>32,600</td>
<td>21,733</td>
<td>16,300</td>
<td>13,040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>116,800</td>
<td>58,400</td>
<td>38,950</td>
<td>29,200</td>
<td>23,350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>188,000</td>
<td>94,000</td>
<td>62,600</td>
<td>47,000</td>
<td>37,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>336,000</td>
<td>168,000</td>
<td>112,000</td>
<td>84,000</td>
<td>67,250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6,576</td>
<td>3,288</td>
<td>2,295</td>
<td>1,644</td>
<td>1,310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15,040</td>
<td>7,520</td>
<td>5,010</td>
<td>3,760</td>
<td>3,010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>26,720</td>
<td>13,360</td>
<td>8,900</td>
<td>6,680</td>
<td>5,320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>42,800</td>
<td>21,400</td>
<td>13,700</td>
<td>10,700</td>
<td>8,580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>92,000</td>
<td>46,000</td>
<td>30,650</td>
<td>23,000</td>
<td>18,400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>171,600</td>
<td>85,800</td>
<td>55,200</td>
<td>41,400</td>
<td>33,150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>266,400</td>
<td>133,200</td>
<td>88,800</td>
<td>66,600</td>
<td>53,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>476,000</td>
<td>238,000</td>
<td>158,800</td>
<td>119,000</td>
<td>95,300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

a. For Tables 1106.3 and 1106.6 when rainfall rates exceed 6 inches per hour, then the figures for roof area shall be adjusted proportionally by multiplying the figure by six and dividing by the maximum rate of rainfall in inches per hour [see Figure 1106.1(b)].
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

Based on the Francis formula:

$$Q = 3.33 \left( L - 0.2H \right) H^{3/2}$$

where

- $Q$ = Flow rate (cubic feet per second)
- $L$ = Length of scupper opening (feet)
- $H$ = Head on scupper (feet (measured 6 feet back from opening))

FIGURE 1106.5

SIZE OF SCUPPERS
### TABLE 1106.6
SIZE OF SEMICIRCULAR ROOF GUTTERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIAMETER OF GUTTERS (inches)</th>
<th>HORIZONTALLY PROJECTED ROOF AREA (square feet)</th>
<th>Rainfall rate (inches per hour)</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(1/8 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal) (0.5-percent slope)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>680</td>
<td>340</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>113</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1,440</td>
<td>720</td>
<td>480</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>240</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2,500</td>
<td>1,250</td>
<td>834</td>
<td>625</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>416</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>3,840</td>
<td>1,920</td>
<td>1,280</td>
<td>960</td>
<td>768</td>
<td>640</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>5,520</td>
<td>2,760</td>
<td>1,840</td>
<td>1,380</td>
<td>1,100</td>
<td>918</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>7,960</td>
<td>3,980</td>
<td>2,655</td>
<td>1,990</td>
<td>1,590</td>
<td>1,325</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>14,400</td>
<td>7,200</td>
<td>4,800</td>
<td>3,600</td>
<td>2,880</td>
<td>2,400</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(1/4 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal) (1-percent slope)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>960</td>
<td>480</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>192</td>
<td>160</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2,040</td>
<td>1,020</td>
<td>681</td>
<td>510</td>
<td>408</td>
<td>340</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3,520</td>
<td>1,760</td>
<td>1,172</td>
<td>880</td>
<td>704</td>
<td>587</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5,440</td>
<td>2,720</td>
<td>1,815</td>
<td>1,360</td>
<td>1,085</td>
<td>905</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>7,800</td>
<td>3,900</td>
<td>2,600</td>
<td>1,950</td>
<td>1,560</td>
<td>1,300</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>11,200</td>
<td>5,600</td>
<td>3,740</td>
<td>2,800</td>
<td>2,340</td>
<td>1,870</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>20,400</td>
<td>10,200</td>
<td>6,800</td>
<td>5,100</td>
<td>4,080</td>
<td>3,400</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(1/2 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal) (2-percent slope)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1,360</td>
<td>680</td>
<td>454</td>
<td>340</td>
<td>272</td>
<td>226</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2,880</td>
<td>1,440</td>
<td>960</td>
<td>720</td>
<td>576</td>
<td>480</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>2,500</td>
<td>1,668</td>
<td>1,250</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>834</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>7,680</td>
<td>3,840</td>
<td>2,560</td>
<td>1,920</td>
<td>1,536</td>
<td>1,280</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>11,040</td>
<td>5,520</td>
<td>3,860</td>
<td>2,760</td>
<td>2,205</td>
<td>1,840</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>15,920</td>
<td>7,960</td>
<td>5,310</td>
<td>3,980</td>
<td>3,180</td>
<td>2,655</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>28,800</td>
<td>14,400</td>
<td>7,200</td>
<td>5,750</td>
<td>4,800</td>
<td>4,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal) (4-percent slope)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1,920</td>
<td>960</td>
<td>640</td>
<td>480</td>
<td>384</td>
<td>320</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4,080</td>
<td>2,040</td>
<td>1,360</td>
<td>1,020</td>
<td>816</td>
<td>680</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>7,080</td>
<td>3,540</td>
<td>2,360</td>
<td>1,770</td>
<td>1,415</td>
<td>1,180</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>11,080</td>
<td>5,540</td>
<td>3,695</td>
<td>2,770</td>
<td>2,220</td>
<td>1,850</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>15,600</td>
<td>7,800</td>
<td>5,200</td>
<td>3,900</td>
<td>3,120</td>
<td>2,600</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>22,400</td>
<td>11,200</td>
<td>7,460</td>
<td>5,600</td>
<td>4,480</td>
<td>3,730</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>13,330</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>8,000</td>
<td>6,660</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².
a. For Tables 1106.3 and 1106.6 when rainfall rates exceed 6 inches per hour, then the figures for roof area shall be adjusted proportionally by multiplying the figure by six and dividing by the maximum rate of rainfall in inches per hour [see Figure 1106.1(b)].
SECTION 1107
SIPHONIC ROOF DRAINAGE SYSTEMS
1107.1 General. Siphonic roof drains and drainage systems shall be designed in accordance with ASME A112.6.9 and ASPE 45.

SECTION 1108
SECONDARY (EMERGENCY) ROOF DRAINS
1108.1 Secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers. Where roof drains are required, secondary (emergency overflow) roof drains or scuppers shall be provided where the roof perimeter construction extends above the roof in such a manner that water will be entrapped if the primary drains allow buildup for any reason. Where primary and secondary roof drains are manufactured as a single assembly, the inlet and outlet for each drain shall be independent.

1108.2 Separate systems required. Secondary roof drain systems shall have the end point of discharge separate from the primary system. Discharge shall be above grade, in a location that would normally be observed by the building occupants or maintenance personnel.

1108.3 Sizing of secondary drains. Secondary (emergency) roof drain systems shall be sized in accordance with Section 1106 based on the rainfall rate indicated in Figure 1106.1(b).

Scuppers shall be sized to prevent the depth of ponding water from exceeding that for which the roof was designed as determined by Section 1101.7. Scuppers shall have an opening dimension of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). The flow through the primary system shall not be considered when sizing the secondary roof drain system.

SECTION 1109
COMBINED SANITARY AND STORM PUBLIC SEWER
1109.1 General. Where the public sewer is a combined system for both sanitary and storm water, the storm sewer shall be connected independently to the public sewer.

SECTION 1110
CONTROLLED FLOW ROOF DRAIN SYSTEMS
1110.1 General. The roof of a structure shall be designed for the storage of water where the storm drainage system is engineered for controlled flow. The controlled flow roof drain system shall be an engineered system in accordance with this section and the design, submittal, approval, inspection and testing requirements of Section 316.1. The controlled flow system shall be designed based on the required rainfall rate in accordance with Section 1106.1.

1110.2 Control devices. The control devices shall be installed so that the rate of discharge of water per minute shall not exceed the values for continuous flow as indicated in Section 1110.1.

1110.3 Installation. Runoff control shall be by control devices. Control devices shall be protected by strainers.

1110.4 Minimum number of roof drains. Not less than two roof drains shall be installed in roof areas 10,000 square feet (929 m²) or less and not less than four roof drains shall be installed in roofs over 10,000 square feet (929 m²) in area.

SECTION 1111
SUBSOIL DRAINS
1111.1 Subsoil drains. Subsoil drains shall be open-jointed, horizontally split or perforated pipe conforming to one of the standards listed in Table 1102.5. Such drains shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter. Where the building is subject to backwater, the subsoil drain shall be protected by an accessibly located backwater valve. Subsoil drains shall discharge to a trapped area drain, sump, dry well or approved location above ground. The subsoil sump shall not be required to have either a gas-tight cover or a vent. The sump and pumping system shall comply with Section 1113.1.

SECTION 1112
BUILDING SUBDRAINS
1112.1 Building subdrains. Building subdrains located below the public sewer level shall discharge into a sump or receiving tank, the contents of which shall be automatically lifted and discharged into the drainage system as required for building sumps. The sump and pumping equipment shall comply with Section 1113.1.

SECTION 1113
SUMPS AND PUMPING SYSTEMS
1113.1 Pumping system. The sump pump, pit and discharge piping shall conform to Sections 1113.1.1 through 1113.1.4.

1113.1.1 Pump capacity and head. The sump pump shall be of a capacity and head appropriate to anticipated use requirements.

1113.1.2 Sump pit. The sump pit shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) in diameter and not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth, unless otherwise approved. The pit shall be accessible and located such that all drainage flows into the pit by gravity. The sump pit shall be constructed of tile, steel, plastic, cast iron, concrete or other approved material, with a removable cover adequate to support anticipated loads in the area of use. The pit floor shall be solid and provide permanent support for the pump.

1113.1.3 Electrical. Electrical service outlets, when required, shall meet the requirements of NFPA 70.

1113.1.4 Piping. Discharge piping shall meet the requirements of Sections 1102.2, 1102.3 or 1102.4 and shall include a gate valve and a full flow check valve. Pipe and fittings shall be the same size as, or larger than, the pump discharge tapping.

Exception: In one- and two-family dwellings, only a check valve shall be required, located on the discharge piping from the pump or ejector.
SECTION 1114
VALUES FOR CONTINUOUS FLOW

1114.1 Equivalent roof area. Where there is a continuous or semicontinuous discharge into the building storm drain or building storm sewer, such as from a pump, ejector, air conditioning plant or similar device, each gallon per minute (L/m) of such discharge shall be computed as being equivalent to 96 square feet (9m²) of roof area, based on a rainfall rate of 1 inch (25.4 mm) per hour.
CHAPTER 12

SPECIAL PIPING AND STORAGE SYSTEMS

Deleted.
CHAPTER 13
NONPOTABLE WATER SYSTEMS

SECTION 1301
GENERAL

1301.1 Scope. The provisions of Chapter 13 shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of systems for the collection, storage, treatment and distribution of nonpotable water. The use and application of nonpotable water shall comply with laws, rules and ordinances applicable in the jurisdiction.

1301.2 Water quality. Nonpotable water for each end use application shall meet the minimum water quality requirements as established for the intended application by the laws, rules and ordinances applicable in the jurisdiction. Where nonpotable water from different sources is combined in a system, the system shall comply with the most stringent of the requirements of this code that are applicable to such sources.

1301.2.1 Residual disinfectants. Where chlorine is used for disinfection, the nonpotable water shall contain not more than 4 ppm (4mg/L) of chloramines or free chlorine when tested in accordance with ASTM D1253. Where ozone is used for disinfection, the nonpotable water shall not contain gas bubbles having elevated levels of ozone at the point of use.

Exception: Reclaimed water sources shall not be required to comply with these requirements.

1301.2.2 Filtration required. Nonpotable water utilized for water closet and urinal flushing applications shall be filtered by a 100-micron or finer filter. Nonpotable water for use within a building shall be colored blue or green.

Exception: Reclaimed water sources shall not be required to comply with these requirements.

1301.2.3 Applications. Untreated rainwater shall be utilized in accordance with Section 1301.2.3.1. Treated rainwater shall be utilized in accordance with Section 1301.2.3.2.

1301.2.3.1 Examples of acceptable uses without treatment.

1. Outdoor irrigation.
2. Decorative fountains.
3. Yard hydrants.
4. Industrial processes (e.g., dust control, indoor hose bibs spray).
5. Vehicle washing.
6. Outdoor hose bibs (not routed through building wall).

1301.2.3.2 Examples of acceptable uses with disinfection and filtration.

1. Toilet flushing.
2. Urinal flushing.
3. Evaporative cooling tower make-up.
4. Trap primers.
5. Fire suppression systems.
6. Clothes washers.
7. Outdoor pools and spas.
8. Hose bibs — Residential.

1301.3 Signage required. Nonpotable water outlets such as hose connections, sillcocks, hose bibs, wall hydrants, yard hydrants, other outdoor outlets, open ended pipes and faucets shall be identified at the point of use for each outlet with signage that reads as follows: “Nonpotable water is utilized for [application name]. CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK.” The words shall be legibly and indelibly printed on a tag or sign constructed of corrosion-resistant waterproof material or shall be indelibly printed on the fixture. The letters of the words shall be not less than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) in height and in colors in contrast to the background on which they are applied. In addition to the required wortage, the pictograph shown in Figure 1301.3 shall appear on the signage required by this section.

1301.4 Permits. Permits shall be required for the construction, installation, alteration and repair of nonpotable water systems. Construction documents, engineering calculations, diagrams and other such data pertaining to the nonpotable water system shall be submitted with each permit application.

1301.5 Potable water connections. Where a potable system is connected to a nonpotable water system, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section 608.
1301.6 Approved components and materials. Piping, plumbing components and materials used in collection and conveyance systems shall be manufactured of material approved for the intended application and compatible with any disinfection and treatment systems used.

1301.6.1 Identification of nonpotable water systems. Where nonpotable plumbing systems (drainage or supply within gray water, rain water or reclaimed water systems) are installed, the piping conveying the nonpotable water shall be identified either by color marking, metal tags or tape in accordance with Section 1301.6.2.

1301.6.2 Nonpotable pipe labeling and marking. Nonpotable distribution piping shall be purple in color or shall be embossed, or integrally stamped or marked, with the words: “CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER — DO NOT DRINK” or the piping shall be installed with a purple identification tape or wrap. Pipe identification shall contain the contents of the piping system and an arrow indicating the direction of flow. Hazardous piping systems shall also contain information addressing the nature of the hazard. Pipe identification shall be repeated at intervals not exceeding 25 feet (7620 mm) and at each point where the piping passes through a wall, floor or roof. Lettering shall be readily observable within the room or space where the piping is located.

1301.6.2.1 Color. The color of the pipe identification shall be discernable and consistent throughout the building. The color purple shall be used to identify reclaimed, rain and gray water distribution systems.

1301.6.2.2 Lettering size. The size of the background color field and lettering shall comply with Table 1301.6.2.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIPE DIAMETER (inches)</th>
<th>LENGTH BACKGROUND COLOR FIELD (inches)</th>
<th>SIZE OF LETTERS (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2 to 12 1/2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2 to 2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2 to 6</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 to 10</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over 10</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1301.6.2.3 Identification tape. Where used, identification tape shall be at least 3 inches (76 mm) wide and have white or black lettering on a purple field stating “CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER — DO NOT DRINK.” Identification tape shall be installed on top of nonpotable rainwater distribution pipes, fastened at least every 10 feet (3048 mm) to each pipe length and run continuously the entire length of the pipe.

1301.7 Insect and vermin control. The system shall be protected to prevent the entrance of insects and vermin into storage tanks and piping systems. Screens installed on vent pipes, inlets, and overflow pipes shall have an aperture of not greater than 1/4 inch and shall be close-fitting or other approved methods. Screen materials shall be compatible with contacting system components and shall not accelerate the corrosion of system components.

1301.8 Freeze protection. Where sustained freezing temperatures occur, provisions shall be made to keep storage tanks and the related piping from freezing.

1301.9 Nonpotable water storage tanks. Nonpotable water storage tanks shall comply with Sections 1301.9.1 through 1301.9.11.

1301.9.1 Sizing. The holding capacity of the storage tank shall be sized in accordance with the anticipated demand.

1301.9.2 Location. Storage tanks shall be installed above or below grade. Above-grade storage tanks shall be protected from direct sunlight and shall be constructed using opaque, UV-resistant materials such as, but not limited to, heavily tinted plastic, fiberglass, lined metal, concrete, wood, or painted to prevent algae growth, or shall have specially constructed sun barriers including, but not limited to, installation in garages, crawl spaces or sheds. Storage tanks and their manholes shall not be located directly under soil piping, waste piping or any source of contamination.

1301.9.3 Materials. Where collected on site, water shall be collected in an approved tank constructed of durable, nonabsorbent and corrosion-resistant materials. The storage tank shall be constructed of materials compatible with any disinfection systems used to treat water upstream of the tank and with any systems used to maintain water quality in the tank. Wooden storage tanks that are not equipped with a makeup water source shall be provided with a flexible liner.

1301.9.4 Foundation and supports. Storage tanks shall be supported on a firm base capable of withstanding the weight of the storage tank when filled to capacity. Storage tanks shall be supported in accordance with the International Building Code.

1301.9.4.1 Ballast. Where the soil can become saturated, an underground storage tank shall be ballasted, or otherwise secured, to prevent the tank from floating out of the ground when empty. The combined weight of the tank and hold down ballast shall meet or exceed the buoyancy force of the tank. Where the installation requires a foundation, the foundation shall be flat and shall be designed to support the weight of the storage tank when full, consistent with the bearing capability of adjacent soil.

1301.9.4.2 Structural support. Where installed below grade, storage tank installations shall be designed to withstand earth and surface structural loads without damage and with minimal deformation when empty or filled with water.

1301.9.5 Makeup water. Where an uninterrupted supply is required for the intended application, potable or reclaimed water shall be provided as a source of makeup water for the storage tank. The makeup water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section...
1301.7 Access. Not less than one access opening shall be provided to allow inspection and cleaning of the tank interior. Access openings shall have an approved locking device or other approved method of securing access. Below-grade storage tanks, located outside of the building, shall be provided with a manhole either not less than 24 inches (610 mm) square or with an inside diameter not less than 24 inches (610 mm). Manholes shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above ground or shall be designed to prevent water infiltration. Finished grade shall be sloped away from the manhole to divert surface water. Manhole covers shall be secured to prevent unauthorized access. Service ports in manhole covers shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter and shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the finished grade level. The service port shall be secured to prevent unauthorized access.

Exception: Storage tanks less than 800 gallons (3028 L) in volume and installed below grade shall not be required to be equipped with a manhole, but shall have a service port not less than 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter.

1301.8 Venting. Storage tanks shall be provided with a vent sized in accordance with Chapter 9 and based on the aggregate diameter of all tank influent pipes. The reservoir vent shall not be connected to sanitary drainage system vents. Vents shall be protected from contamination by means of an approved cap or U-bend installed with the opening directed downward. Vent outlets shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above grade or as necessary to prevent surface water from entering the storage tank. Vent openings shall be protected against the entrance of vermin and insects in accordance with the requirements of Section 1301.7.

1301.9 Draining of tanks. Where tanks require draining for service or cleaning, tanks shall be drained by using a pump or by a drain located at the lowest point in the tank. The tank drain pipe shall discharge as required for overflow pipes and shall not be smaller in size than specified in Table 606.5.7. Not less than one cleanout shall be provided on each drain pipe in accordance with Section 708.

1301.10 Marking and signage. Each nonpotable water storage tank shall be labeled with its rated capacity. The contents of storage tanks shall be identified with the words “CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK.” Where an opening is provided that could allow the entry of personnel, the opening shall be marked with the words, “DANGER – CONFINED SPACE.” Markings shall be indelibly printed on the tank or on a tag or sign constructed of corrosion-resistant waterproof material that is mounted on the tank. The letters of the words shall be not less than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) in height and shall be of a color in contrast with the background on which they are applied.

Storage tanks shall be tested in accordance with the following:

1. After 24 hours, supplemental water shall be introduced for a period of 15 minutes to verify proper drainage of the overflow system and that there are no leaks.
2. The tank drain shall be observed for proper operation.
3. The makeup water system shall be observed for proper operation and successful automatic shut-off of the system at the refill threshold shall be verified.

1301.10 System abandonment. If the owner of an on-site nonpotable water reuse system or rainwater collection and conveyance system elects to cease use of, or fails to properly maintain such system, the system shall be abandoned and shall comply with the following:

1. All system piping connecting to a utility-provided water system shall be removed or disabled.
2. The distribution piping system shall be replaced with an approved potable water supply piping system. Where an existing potable pipe system is already in place, the fixtures shall be connected to the existing system.
3. The storage tank shall be secured from accidental access by sealing or locking tank inlets and access points, or filling with sand or equivalent.

1301.11 Trenching requirements for nonpotable water piping. Nonpotable water collection and distribution piping and reclaimed water piping shall be separated from the building sewer and potable water piping underground by 5 feet (1524 mm) of undisturbed or compacted earth. Nonpotable water collection and distribution piping shall not be located in, under or above cesspools, septic tanks, septic tank drain-
NONPOTABLE WATER SYSTEMS

age fields or seepage pits. Buried nonpotable water piping shall comply with the requirements of Section 306.

Exceptions:

1. The required separation distance shall not apply where the bottom of the nonpotable water pipe within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the sewer is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the top of the highest point of the sewer and the pipe materials conform to Table 702.3.

2. The required separation distance shall not apply where the bottom of the potable water service pipe within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the nonpotable water pipe is a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) above the top of the highest point of the nonpotable water pipe and the pipe materials comply with the requirements of Table 605.4.

3. Nonpotable water pipe is permitted to be located in the same trench with a building sewer, provided that such sewer is constructed of materials that comply with the requirements of Table 702.2.

4. The required separation distance shall not apply where a nonpotable water pipe crosses a sewer pipe, provided that the pipe is sleeved to at least 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the sewer pipe centerline on both sides of such crossing, with pipe materials that comply with Table 702.2.

5. The required separation distance shall not apply where a potable water service pipe crosses a nonpotable water pipe, provided that the potable water service pipe is sleeved for a distance of at least 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the centerline of the nonpotable pipe on both sides of such crossing, with pipe materials that comply with Table 702.2.

6. Irrigation piping located outside of a building and downstream of the backflow preventer is not required to meet the trenching requirements where nonpotable water is used for outdoor applications.

SECTION 1302
ON-SITE NONPOTABLE WATER REUSE SYSTEMS

1302.1 General. The provisions of Section 1302 shall govern the construction, installation, alteration and repair of on-site nonpotable water reuse systems for the collection, storage, treatment and distribution of on-site sources of nonpotable water as permitted by the jurisdiction.

1302.2 Sources. On-site nonpotable water reuse systems shall collect waste discharge from only the following sources: bathroom, showers, lavatories, clothes washers and laundry trays. Water from other approved nonpotable sources including swimming pool backwash operations, air conditioner condensate, rainwater, cooling tower blow-down water, foundation drain water, steam system condensate, fluid cooler discharge water, food steamer discharge water, combination oven discharge water, industrial process water and fire pump test water shall also be permitted to be collected for reuse by on-site nonpotable water reuse systems, as approved by the code official and as appropriate for the intended application.

1302.2.1 Prohibited sources. Waste water containing urine or fecal matter shall not be diverted to on-site nonpotable water reuse systems and shall discharge to the sanitary drainage system of the building or premises in accordance with Chapter 7. Reverse osmosis system reject water, water softener discharge water, kitchen sink waste water, dishwasher waste water and waste water discharged from wet-hood scrubbers shall not be collected for reuse in an on-site nonpotable water reuse system.

1302.3 Traps. Traps serving fixtures and devices discharging waste water to on-site nonpotable water reuse systems shall comply with Section 1002.4.

1302.4 Collection pipe. On-site nonpotable water reuse systems shall utilize drainage piping approved for use in plumbing drainage systems to collect and convey untreated water for reuse. Vent piping approved for use in plumbing venting systems shall be utilized for vents in the gray water system. Collection and vent piping materials shall comply with Section 702.

1302.4.1 Installation. Collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall be installed in accordance with Section 704.

1302.4.2 Joints. Collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall utilize joints approved for use with the distribution piping and appropriate for the intended applications as specified in Section 705.

1302.4.3 Size. Collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall be sized in accordance with drainage sizing requirements specified in Section 710.

1302.4.4 Labeling and marking. Additional marking of collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall be required beyond that required for sanitary drainage, waste and vent piping by Chapter 7.

1302.5 Filtration. Untreated water collected for reuse shall be filtered as required for the intended end use. Filters shall be accessible for inspection and maintenance. Filters shall utilize a pressure gauge or other approved method to provide indication when a filter requires servicing or replacement. Filters shall be installed with shutoff valves immediately upstream and downstream to allow for isolation during maintenance. Nonpotable water for use within a building shall be colored blue or green.

1302.6 Disinfection and treatment. Where the intended application for nonpotable water collected on site for reuse requires disinfection or other treatment or both, it shall be disinfected as determined by a registered design professional to ensure that the required water quality is delivered at the point of use. Nonpotable water collected on site containing untreated gray water shall be retained in collection reservoirs for a maximum of 24 hours.

1302.6.1 Gray water used for fixture flushing. Gray water used for flushing water closets and urinals shall be disinfected and treated by an on-site water reuse treatment system complying with NSF 350.
1302.7 Storage tanks. Storage tanks utilized in on-site non-potable water reuse systems shall comply with Sections 1301.9 and 1302.7.1 through 1302.7.3.

1302.7.1 Location. Storage tanks shall be located with a minimum horizontal distance between various elements as indicated in Table 1302.7.1.

1302.7.2 Design and construction. Storage tanks shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapters 16 through 22 of the International Building Code and in accordance with the following standards, as appropriate for the material of the storage tank: AWWA D100, AWWA D115, AWWA D120, UL 58, UL 1746, UL 1316, UL 142, API 12F or API 12D.

1302.7.3 Outlets. Outlets shall be located not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the bottom of the storage tank and shall not skim water from the surface.

1302.8 Valves. Valves shall be supplied on on-site nonpotable water reuse systems in accordance with Sections 1302.8.1 and 1302.8.2.

1302.8.1 Bypass valve. One three-way diverter valve listed and labeled to NSF 50 or other approved device shall be installed on collection piping upstream of each storage tank, or drainfield, as applicable, to divert untreated on-site reuse sources to the sanitary sewer to allow servicing and inspection of the system. Bypass valves shall be installed downstream of fixture traps and vent connections. Bypass valves shall be marked to indicate the direction of flow, connection and storage tank or drainfield connection. Bypass valves shall be installed in accessible locations. Two shutoff valves shall not be installed to serve as a bypass valve.

1302.8.2 Backwater valve. One or more backwater valves shall be installed on each overflow and tank drain pipe. Backwater valves shall be in accordance with Section 715.

1302.9 Pumping and control system. Mechanical equipment including pumps, valves and filters shall be easily accessible and removable in order to perform repair, maintenance and cleaning. The minimum flow rate and flow pressure delivered by the pumping system shall be appropriate for the application and in accordance with Section 604.

1302.10 Water pressure-reducing valve or regulator. Where the water pressure supplied by the pumping system exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, a pressure-reducing valve shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the nonpotable water distribution system piping to 80 psi (552 kPa) static or less. Pressure-reducing valves shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section 604.8.

Exception: Service lines to sillcocks and outside hydrants, and main supply risers where pressure from the mains is reduced to 80 psi (552 kPa) or less at individual fixtures.

1302.11 Distribution pipe. Distribution piping utilized in on-site nonpotable water reuse systems shall comply with Sections 1302.11.1 through 1302.11.3.

Exception: Irrigation piping located outside of the building and downstream of a backflow preventer.

1302.11.1 Materials, joints and connections. Distribution piping shall conform to the standards and requirements specified in Section 605.

1302.11.2 Design. On-site nonpotable water reuse distribution piping systems shall be designed and sized in accordance with Section 604 for the intended application.

1302.11.3 Marking. On-site nonpotable water distribution piping labeling and marking shall comply with Section 1301.6.

1302.12 Tests and inspections. Tests and inspections shall be performed in accordance with Sections 1302.12.1 through 1302.12.6.

1302.12.1 Collection pipe and vent test. Drain, waste and vent piping used for on-site water reuse systems shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

1302.12.2 Storage tank test. Storage tanks shall be tested in accordance with Section 1301.9.11.

1302.12.3 Water supply system test. The testing of makeup water supply piping and distribution piping shall be conducted in accordance with Section 312.5.

1302.12.4 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention assemblies. Deleted.

1302.12.5 Inspection of vermin and insect protection. Inlets and vents to the system shall be inspected to verify that each is protected to prevent the entrance of insects and

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ELEMENT</th>
<th>MINIMUM HORIZONTAL DISTANCE FROM STORAGE TANK (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Critical root zone (CRZ) of protected trees</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lot line adjoining private lots</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seepage pits</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septic tanks</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water wells</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streams and lakes</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water service</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public water main</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
vermin into the storage tank and piping systems in accordance with Section 1301.7.

1302.12.6 Water quality test. The quality of the water for the intended application shall be verified at the point of use in accordance with the requirements of the jurisdiction.

1302.13 Operation and maintenance manuals. Operation and maintenance materials shall be supplied with nonpotable on-site water reuse systems in accordance with Sections 1302.13.1 through 1302.13.4.

1302.13.1 Manual. A detailed operations and maintenance manual shall be supplied with all systems.

1302.13.2 Schematics. The manual shall include a detailed system schematic, and the locations and a list of all system components, including manufacturer and model number.

1302.13.3 Maintenance procedures. The manual shall provide a schedule and procedures for all system components requiring periodic maintenance. Consumable parts, including filters, shall be noted along with part numbers.

1302.13.4 Operations procedures. The manual shall include system startup and shutdown procedures. The manual shall include detailed operating procedures for the system.

SECTION 1303
NONPOTABLE RAINWATER COLLECTION AND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

1303.1 General. The provisions of Section 1303 shall govern the construction, installation, alteration and repair of rainwater collection and conveyance systems for the collection, storage, treatment and distribution of rainwater for nonpotable applications, as permitted by the jurisdiction.

1303.2 Collection surface. Rainwater shall be collected only from above-ground impervious roofing surfaces constructed from approved materials for acceptable uses without treatment listed in Section 1301.2.3 or where additional appropriate treatment is designed by a registered design professional. Collection of water from vehicular parking or pedestrian surfaces shall be prohibited except where the water is used exclusively for landscape irrigation. Overflow and bleed-off pipes from roof-mounted appliances including, but not limited to, evaporative coolers, water heaters, and solar water heaters shall not discharge onto rainwater collection surfaces.

1303.3 Debris excluders. Downspouts and leaders shall be connected to a roof washer and shall be equipped with a debris excluder or equivalent device to prevent the contamination of collected rainwater with leaves, sticks, pine needles and similar undesirable material. Debris excluders and equivalent devices shall be self-cleaning.

1303.4 Roof washer. A sufficient amount of rainwater shall be diverted at the beginning of each rain event, and not allowed to enter the storage tank, to wash accumulated debris from the collection surface. The amount of rainfall to be diverted shall be field adjustable as necessary to minimize storage tank water contamination. The roof washer shall not rely on manually operated valves or devices, and shall operate automatically. Diverted rainwater shall not be drained to the roof surface, and shall be discharged in a manner consistent with the storm water runoff requirements of the jurisdiction. Roof washers shall be accessible for maintenance and service.

1303.5 Roof gutters and downspouts. Gutters and downspouts shall be constructed of materials that are compatible with the collection surface and the rainwater quality for the desired end use. Joints shall be watertight.

1303.5.1 Slope. Roof gutters, leaders and rainwater collection piping shall slope continuously toward collection inlets. Gutters and downspouts shall have a slope of not less than 1/4 inch per foot (10.4 mm/m) along their entire length, and shall not permit the collection or pooling of water at any point.

Exception: Siphonic drainage systems installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions shall not be required to have a slope.

1303.5.2 Size. Gutters and downspouts shall be installed and sized in accordance with Section 1106.6 and local rainfall rates.

1303.5.3 Cleanouts. Cleanouts shall be provided in the water conveyance system to allow access to all filters, flushes, pipes and downspouts.

1303.6 Drainage. Water drained from the roof washer (first flush diverter) or debris exclusion shall not be drained to the sanitary sewer. Such water shall be diverted from the storage tank and discharge in a location that will not cause erosion or damage to property in accordance with the International Building Code. Roof washers and debris excluders shall be provided with an automatic means of self-draining between rain events, and shall not drain onto roof surfaces.

1303.7 Collection pipe. Rainwater collection and conveyance systems shall utilize drainage piping approved for use within plumbing drainage systems to collect and convey captured rainwater. Vent piping approved for use within plumbing venting systems shall be utilized for vents within the rainwater system. Collection and vent piping materials shall comply with Section 702.

1303.7.1 Installation. Collection piping conveying captured rainwater shall be installed in accordance with Section 704.

1303.7.2 Joints. Collection piping conveying captured rainwater shall utilize joints approved for use with the distribution piping and appropriate for the intended applications as specified in Section 705.

1303.7.3 Size. Collection piping conveying captured rainwater shall be sized in accordance with drainage sizing requirements specified in Section 710.

1303.7.4 Marking. Additional marking of collection piping conveying captured rainwater for reuse shall not be required beyond that required for sanitary drainage, waste and vent piping by Chapter 7.

1303.8 Filtration. Collected rainwater shall be filtered as required for the intended end use. Filters shall be accessible for inspection and maintenance. Filters shall utilize a pressure gauge or other approved method to provide indication when a
filter requires servicing or replacement. Filters shall be installed with shutoff valves installed immediately upstream and downstream to allow for isolation during maintenance. Nonpotable water for use within a building shall be colored blue or green.

1303.9 Disinfection. Where the intended application for rainwater requires disinfection or other treatment or both, it shall be disinfected as determined by a registered design professional to ensure that the required water quality is delivered at the point of use. Where chlorine is used for disinfection or treatment, water shall be tested for residual chlorine in accordance with ASTM D1253. The levels of residual chlorine shall not exceed that allowed for the intended use in accordance with the requirements of the jurisdiction.

1303.10 Storage tanks. Storage tanks utilized in nonpotable rainwater collection and conveyance systems shall comply with Sections 1301.9 and 1303.10.1 through 1303.10.3.

1303.10.1 Location. Storage tanks shall be located with a minimum horizontal distance between various elements as indicated in Table 1303.10.1.

1303.10.2 Inlets. Storage tank inlets shall be designed to introduce collected rainwater into the tank with minimum turbulence, and shall be located and designed to avoid agitating the contents of the storage tank.

1303.10.3 Outlets. Outlets shall be located at least 4 inches (102 mm) above the bottom of the storage tank and shall not skim water from the surface.

1303.11 Valves. Valves shall be supplied on rainwater collection and conveyance systems in accordance with Section 1303.11.1.

1303.11.1 Backwater valve. Backwater valves shall be installed on each overflow and tank drain pipe. Backwater valves shall be in accordance with Section 715.

1303.11.2 (P2912.11.1) Influent diversion. A means shall be provided to divert storage tank influent to allow for maintenance and repair of the storage tank system.

1303.12 Pumping and control system. Mechanical equipment including pumps, valves and filters shall be easily accessible and removable in order to perform repair, maintenance and cleaning. The minimum flow rate and flow pressure delivered by the pumping system shall be appropriate for the application and in accordance with Section 604.

1303.13 Water pressure-reducing valve or regulator. Where the water pressure supplied by the pumping system exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, a pressure-reducing valve shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the rainwater distribution system piping to 80 psi (552 kPa) static or less. Pressure-reducing valves shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section 604.8.

Exception: Service lines to sillcocks and outside hydrants, and main supply risers where pressure from the mains is reduced to 80 psi (552 kPa) or less at individual fixtures.


Exception: Irrigation piping located outside of the building and downstream of a backflow preventer.

1303.14.1 Materials, joints and connections. Distribution piping shall conform to the standards and requirements specified in Section 605 for nonpotable water.

1303.14.2 Design. Distribution piping systems shall be designed and sized in accordance with Section 604 for the intended application.

1303.14.3 Marking. Nonpotable rainwater distribution piping labeling and marking shall comply with Section 1301.6.

1303.15 Tests and inspections. Tests and inspections shall be performed in accordance with Sections 1303.15.1 through 1303.15.8.

1303.15.1 Roof gutter inspection and test. Deleted.

1303.15.2 Roofwasher test. Deleted.

1303.15.3 Collection pipe and vent test. Drain, waste and vent piping used for rainwater collection and conveyance systems shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

1303.15.4 Storage tank test. Storage tanks shall be tested with either air or water in accordance with Section 1301.9.11.

1303.15.5 Water supply system test. The testing of makeup water supply piping and distribution piping shall be conducted in accordance with Section 312.5.

1303.15.6 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention assemblies. Deleted.

1303.15.7 Inspection of vermin and insect protection. Inlets and vents to the system shall be inspected to verify that each is protected to prevent the entrance of insects and vermin into the storage tank and piping systems in accordance with Section 1301.7.

1303.15.8 Water quality test. The quality of the water for the intended application shall be verified at the point of use in accordance with the requirements of the jurisdiction.

### TABLE 1303.10.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ELEMENT</th>
<th>MINIMUM HORIZONTAL DISTANCE FROM STORAGE TANK (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Critical root zone (CRZ) of protected trees</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lot line adjoining private lots</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seepage pits</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septic tanks</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
1303.16 Operation and maintenance manuals. Operation and maintenance manuals shall be supplied with rainwater collection and conveyance systems in accordance with Sections 1303.16.1 through 1303.16.4.

1303.16.1 Manual. A detailed operations and maintenance manual shall be supplied with all systems.

1303.16.2 Schematics. The manual shall include a detailed system schematic, and locations and a list of all system components, including manufacturer and model number.

1303.16.3 Maintenance procedures. The manual shall provide a maintenance schedule and procedures for all system components requiring periodic maintenance. Consumable parts, including filters, shall be noted along with part numbers.

1303.16.4 Operations procedures. The manual shall include system startup and shutdown procedures, as well as detailed operating procedures.

SECTION 1304
RECLAIMED WATER SYSTEMS

1304.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the construction, installation, alteration and repair of systems supplying nonpotable reclaimed water.

1304.2 Water pressure-reducing valve or regulator. Where the reclaimed water pressure supplied to the building exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, a pressure-reducing valve shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the reclaimed water distribution system piping to 80 psi (552 kPa) static or less. Pressure-reducing valves shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section 604.8.

Exception: Service lines to sillcocks and outside hydrants, and main supply risers where pressure from the mains is reduced to 80 psi (552 kPa) or less at individual fixtures.

1304.3 Reclaimed water systems. The design of the reclaimed water systems shall conform to ASTM E2635 and accepted engineering practice.

1304.3.1 Distribution pipe. Distribution piping shall comply with Sections 1304.3.1.1 through 1304.3.1.3.

Exception: Irrigation piping located outside of the building and downstream of a backflow preventer.

1304.3.1.1 Materials, joints and connections. Distribution piping conveying reclaimed water shall conform to standards and requirements specified in Section 605 for nonpotable water.

1304.3.1.2 Design. Distribution piping systems shall be designed and sized in accordance with Section 604 for the intended application.

1304.3.1.3 Labeling and marking. Nonpotable rainwater distribution piping labeling and marking shall comply with Section 1301.6.

1304.4 Tests and inspections. Tests and inspections shall be performed in accordance with Section 1304.4.1.

1304.4.1 Water supply system test. The testing of makeup water supply piping and reclaimed water distribution piping shall be conducted in accordance with Section 312.5.
CHAPTER 14

SUBSURFACE LANDSCAPE IRRIGATION SYSTEMS

Deleted.
# CHAPTER 15

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.8.

### ANSI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A118.10—99</td>
<td>Specifications for Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation</td>
<td>417.5.2.5, 417.5.2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z4.3—95</td>
<td>Minimum Requirements for Nonsewered Waste-disposal Systems</td>
<td>311.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSA B45.5—11</td>
<td>Plastic Plumbing Fixtures</td>
<td>407.1, 415.1, 416.1, 416.2, 417.1, 418.1, 419.1, 420.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### AHRI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I010—02</td>
<td>Self-contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking-Water Coolers</td>
<td>410.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### API

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12D—2008</td>
<td>Specification for Field Welded Tanks for Storage of Production Liquids, effective April 1, 2009</td>
<td>1302.7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12F—2008</td>
<td>Specification for Shop Welded Tanks for Storage of Production Liquids, effective April 1 2009</td>
<td>1302.7.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ASME

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A112.1.2—2004</td>
<td>Air Gaps in Plumbing Systems</td>
<td>406.1, 409.2, Table 608.1, 608.13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A112.1.3—2000 (R2011)</td>
<td>Air Gap Fittings for Use with Plumbing Fixtures, Appliances and Appurtenances</td>
<td>406.1, 409.2, Table 608.1, 608.13.1, 1102.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A112.3.1—2007</td>
<td>Stainless Steel Drainage Systems for Sanitary, DWV, Storm and Vacuum Applications Above and Below Ground</td>
<td>412.1, Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5, 1102.6, Table 1102.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASME A112.3—2013 / CSA B45.9—2013</td>
<td>Macerating Toilet Systems and Related Components</td>
<td>712.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A112.4.1—2009</td>
<td>Water Heater Relief Valve Drain Tubes</td>
<td>504.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ASME—continued

A112.4.2—2009 Water Closet Personal Hygiene Devices .................................................. 424.9
A112.4.3—1999 (R2010) Plastic Fittings for Connecting Water Closets to the Sanitary Drainage System .............................................. 405.4
A112.4.14—2004 (R2010) Manually Operated, Quarter-Turn Shut-off Valves for Use in Plumbing Systems .................................................. 605.7
A112.14.6—2010 FOG (Fats, Oils and Greases) Disposal Systems ........................................ 1003.3.4, 1003.3.6
A112.6.1M—1997 (R2008) Floor-attached Supports for Off-the-floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use ................................................................. 405.4.3
A112.6.2—2000 (R2010) Framing-attached Supports for Off-the-floor Water Closets with Concealed Tanks ................................................................. 405.4.3
A112.6.3—2001 (R2007) Roof and Trench Drains .............................................................. 412.1
A112.6.4—2003 (R2008) Roof, Deck, and Balcony Drains ................................................. 1102.6
A112.6.7—2010 Enamel and Epoxy-coated Cast-iron and PVC Plastic Sanitary Floor Sinks ...................................................................................... 427.1
A112.6.9—2005 (R2010) Siphonic Roof Drains ................................................................. 1107.1
A112.6.14—2003 Grease Interceptors .............................................................................. 715.2
A112.14.3—2000 Grease Removal Devices ...................................................................... 1003.3.4
A112.18.1—2012/ CSA B125.2—2011 Plumbing Supply Fittings ........................................ 424.1.2
A112.18.2—2011/ CSA B125.2—2011 Performance Requirements for Backflow Protection Devices and Systems in Plumbing Fixture Fittings ......................................................................................................................... 424.2, 424.4, 424.6
A112.18.6/ CSA B125.6—2009 Flexible Water Connectors ................................................. 605.6
A112.18.9/2011 Protectors/Insulators for Exposed Waste and Supplies on Accessible Fixtures ................................................................................................. 404.3
A112.19/1—2013 Enamel Cast Iron and Enamel Steel Plumbing Fixtures ......................... 407.1, 410.1, 415.1, 416.1, 418.1
A112.19.2—2013/ CSA B45.1—13 Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures ........................................ 401.2, 405.9, 407.1, 408.1, 415.1, 416.1, 417.1, 418.1, 419.1, 420.1
A112.19.3—2008/ CSA B45.4—08(R2013) Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures .................. 405.9, 407.1, 415.1, 416.1, 418.1, 420.1
A112.19.5—2011 Flush Valves and Spuds for Water-closets, Urinals, and Tanks .................. 425.4
A112.19.7M—2012/ CSA B45.1—13 Hydromassage Bathtub Systems .............................. 421.1, 421.4
A112.19.10—2012 Wall Mounted and Pedestal Mounted, Adjustable, Elevating, Tilting and Pivoting Lavatory, Sink and Shampoo Bowl Carrier Systems and Drain Systems .............................................................................................................. 416.4, 418.3
A112.19.12—2006 Six-Liter Water Closets Equipped with a Dual Flushing Device ............. 420.1
A112.19.15—2005 Vitreous China Nonwater Urinals .......................................................... 419.1
A112.19.19—2006 Hydrants for Utility and Maintenance Use ........................................... 706.1, 608.13.6
A112.21.3—1985(R2007) Cleanouts .................................................................................. 708.1.10.2
A112.36.2M—1991 Performance Requirements for Individual Thermostatic, Pressure Balancing and Combination Control Valves for Individual Fixture Fittings ................................................................................................................ ................................................................. 424.3, 424.4, 607.4
A112.18.10—1991 Pipe Threads, General Purpose (inch) .................................................... 605.10.3, 605.11.3, 605.13.4, 605.15.3, 605.18.1, 605.22.4, 705.2.3, 705.3.3, 705.6.4, 705.19.1, 705.11.3
B1.10.1—1983(R2006) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings Classes 150 and 300 .................. 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.10.4—2011 Gray Iron Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250 ....................................... 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.10.9—2007 Factory-made Wrought Steel Butt Welding Fittings .................................. 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.11—2011 Forged Fittings, Socket-welding and Threaded .......................................................................................................................... 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.12—2009 Cast-iron Threaded Drainage Fittings ............................................................ 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.15—2011 Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings ................................................................. 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.16—2012 Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings ........................................ 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.17—2012 Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings DWV ................................ 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.18—2012 Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings ........................................ 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.19—2012 Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings ........................................ 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.19.2010(M) Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings ................................................................. 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.20—2012 Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings DWV ...................................................................................... 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.22—2001(R2010) Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings ................................................................................................. 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.23—2011 Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings DWV ................................ 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.26—2011 Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings ........................................ 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.28—1994 Wrought Steel Butt Welding Short Radius Elbows and Returns .................. 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.29—2012 Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings DWV ................................................................. 702.4, Table 1102.7
B1.30—2009 Valves Flanged, Threaded and Welding End ................................................. 705.7
B1.51—2011 Copper and Copper Alloy Press-Connect Pressure Fittings ......................... 705.5
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>45—2013</td>
<td>Siphonic Roof Drainage Systems.</td>
<td>1107.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ASPE**

American Society of Plumbing Engineers
8614 Catalpa Avenue, Suite 1007
Chicago, IL, 60656-1116

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1001—08</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Individual Thermostatic, Pressure Balancing and Combination Control Valves for Individual Fixture Fittings</td>
<td>.424.3, 424.4, 607.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1002—08</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated Mixing Valves for Hot Water Distribution Systems</td>
<td>501.2, 613.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1003—09</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Trap Seal Primer Valves; Potable Water Supplied</td>
<td>1002.4.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1004—08</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants, Freeze Resistant, Automatic Draining Type</td>
<td>413.1, 608.13.6, 608.13.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1005—99</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Water Heater Drain Valves</td>
<td>.409.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1008—06</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Plumbing Aspects of Food Waste Disposer Units</td>
<td>604.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1010—04</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Pressure Vacuum Breaker Assembly</td>
<td>.608.1, 608.13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1011—04</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1012—09</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Atmospheric Vent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1013—09</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventers and Reduced Pressure Principle Fire Protection</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.2, 608.16.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1015—09</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Double Check Backflow Prevention Assemblies and Double Check Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ASSE 1016/ ASME A112.1016/ CSA B125.16—2011**

Performance Requirements for Individual and Branch Type Air Admittance Valves for Chemical Waste Systems | 901.3, 918.8
---
Performance Requirements for Stack Air Admittance Valves for Sanitary Drainage Systems | 918.1
Performance Requirements for Individual and Branch Type Air Admittance Valves for Sanitary Drainage Systems—friture and Branch Devices | 918.1
Performance Requirements for Hose Connection Backflow Preventers | 608.1, 608.13.6
Performance Requirements for Chemical Dispensing Systems | 608.13.9
Performance Requirements for Spill Resistant Vacuum Breaker | 608.13.5, 608.13.8
Performance Requirements for Outdoor Enclosures for Fluid Conveying Components | 608.14.1
Performance Requirements for Removable and Nonremovable Push Fit Fittings | Table 605.5
Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated, Flow Reduction Valves to Individual Supply Fittings | 424.7
ASSE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Table section numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A35/A35M—12</td>
<td>Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-dipped, Zinc-coated</td>
<td>605.3, 605.4, Table 702.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A74—13A</td>
<td>Specification for Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings</td>
<td>702.1, 702.2, 702.3, 702.4, 702.7, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A312/A312M—13a</td>
<td>Specification for Seamless, Welded, and Heavily Cold Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes</td>
<td>605.3, 605.4, 605.5, 605.23.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A733—2003(2009)e1</td>
<td>Specification for Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel and Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipe Nipples</td>
<td>Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A778—01(2009)e1</td>
<td>Specification for Welded Unannealed Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubular Products</td>
<td>Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A888—13A</td>
<td>Specification for Hubless Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Application</td>
<td>Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 702.7, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B32—08</td>
<td>Specification for Solder Metal</td>
<td>605.13.3, 605.14.6, 705.6.3, 705.17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B42—10</td>
<td>Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes</td>
<td>605.3, 605.4, Table 702.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B43—09</td>
<td>Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes</td>
<td>605.3, 605.4, Table 702.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B75—11</td>
<td>Specification for Seamless Copper Tube</td>
<td>605.3, 605.4, Table 702.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B88—09</td>
<td>Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube</td>
<td>605.3, 605.4, Table 702.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B152/B152M—13</td>
<td>Specification for Copper Sheet, Strip Plate and Rolled Bar</td>
<td>402.3, 417.5.2.4, 425.3.3, 902.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B251—10</td>
<td>Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube</td>
<td>605.3, 605.4, Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B302—12</td>
<td>Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes</td>
<td>605.3, 605.4, Table 702.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B306—09</td>
<td>Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)</td>
<td>702.1, Table 702.2, Table 1102.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B447—12a</td>
<td>Specification for Welded Copper Tube</td>
<td>Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B687—99(2011)</td>
<td>Specification for Brass, Copper and Chromium-plated Pipe Nipples</td>
<td>Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B813—10</td>
<td>Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube</td>
<td>605.13.3, 605.14.6, 705.6.3, 705.7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4—04(2009)</td>
<td>Specification for Clay Drain Tile and Perforated Clay Drain Tile</td>
<td>Table 702.3, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C14—11</td>
<td>Specification for Nonreinforced Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain and Culvert Pipe</td>
<td>Table 702.3, Table 1102.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C76—13a</td>
<td>Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe</td>
<td>Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C425—04(2009)</td>
<td>Specification for Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Fittings</td>
<td>Table 705.12, Table 705.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C443—12</td>
<td>Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets</td>
<td>Table 705.5, Table 705.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C564—12</td>
<td>Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings</td>
<td>705.4.2, 705.4.3, 705.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Number</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Table Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D321—07</td>
<td>Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals</td>
<td>705.2.1, 705.11.1, 705.13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D326—12</td>
<td>Specification for Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing</td>
<td>Table 605.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3311—11</td>
<td>Specification for Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV) Plastic Fittings Patterns</td>
<td>Table 1102.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4068—09</td>
<td>Specification for Chlorinated Polyethylene (CPE) Sheeting for Concealed Water-containment Membrane</td>
<td>417.5.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4551—12</td>
<td>Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Flexible Concealed Water-containment Membrane</td>
<td>417.5.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2635—08</td>
<td>Standard Practice for Water Conservation in Buildings Through In-Situ Water Reclamation</td>
<td>1304.3, 1302.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2727—10</td>
<td>Standard Practice for the Assessment of Rainwater Quality</td>
<td>1302.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F405—05</td>
<td>Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene (PE) Pipe and Fittings</td>
<td>Table 1102.5, Table 1403.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F409—12</td>
<td>Specification for Thermoplastic Accessible and Replaceable Plastic Tube and Tubular Fittings</td>
<td>424.1.2, Table 1102.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F437—09</td>
<td>Specification for Threaded Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80</td>
<td>Table 605.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F438—09</td>
<td>Specification for Socket-type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Schedule 40</td>
<td>Table 605.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F439—12</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80</td>
<td>Table 605.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F441/F441M—13</td>
<td>Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80</td>
<td>Table 605.3, Table 605.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F442/F442M—13</td>
<td>Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)</td>
<td>Table 605.3, Table 605.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F477—10</td>
<td>Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe</td>
<td>605.24, 705.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F493—10</td>
<td>Specification for Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings</td>
<td>605.15.2, 605.16.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F628—08</td>
<td>Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe with a Cellulose Core</td>
<td>Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, 702.5.2.2, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F714—2013</td>
<td>Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter</td>
<td>Table 702.3, 717.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F876—2013</td>
<td>Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing</td>
<td>Table 605.3, Table 605.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F877—2011a</td>
<td>Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot and Cold Water Distribution Systems</td>
<td>Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F891—10</td>
<td>Specification for Coextruded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core</td>
<td>Table 702.1 Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5, Table 1102.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1055—13</td>
<td>Standard Specification for Electrofusion Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene and Crosslinked Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing</td>
<td>Table 605.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1281—11</td>
<td>Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/ Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe</td>
<td>Table 605.21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1282—10</td>
<td>Specification for Composite Pressure Pipe</td>
<td>605.3, Table 605.4, 605.5, 605.21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1412—09</td>
<td>Specification for Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings for Corrosive Waste Drainage</td>
<td>Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.4, 705.14.1, 901.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1488—09e1</td>
<td>Specification for Coextruded Composite Pipe</td>
<td>Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 1403.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1673—10</td>
<td>Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) Corrosive Waste Drainage Systems</td>
<td>Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, 705.15.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1807—13</td>
<td>Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing</td>
<td>Table 605.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1866—07</td>
<td>Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Schedule 40 Drainage and DWV Fabricated Fittings</td>
<td>Table 702.4, Table 1102.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1960—12</td>
<td>Specification for Cold Expansion Fittings with PEX Reinforcing Rings for use with Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing</td>
<td>Table 605.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1970—12</td>
<td>Special Engineered Fittings, Appurtenances or Valves for use in Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) OR Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Systems</td>
<td>Table 605.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1974—09</td>
<td>Specification for Metal Insert Fittings for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene and Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene Composite Pressure Pipe</td>
<td>Table 605.5, 605.21.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CISPI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>301—04a</td>
<td>Specification for Hubless Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Applications.</td>
<td>Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 708.7, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5, Table 1102.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310—04</td>
<td>Specification for Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Applications.</td>
<td>705.4.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CSA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A257.1M—2009</td>
<td>Circular Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, Sewer Pipe and Fittings</td>
<td>Table 702.3, Table 1102.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A257.2M—2009</td>
<td>Reinforced Circular Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, Sewer Pipe and Fittings</td>
<td>Table 702.3, Table 1102.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A257.3M—2009</td>
<td>Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Manhole Sections and Fittings Using Rubber Gaskets</td>
<td>705.5, 705.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASME A112.18.1—2012/CSA B125.1—2012</td>
<td>Plumbing Supply Fittings.</td>
<td>424.1, 424.2, 424.3, 424.4, 424.6, 424.8, 605.7, 607.4, 608.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASME A112.18.2—2011/CSA B125.2—2011</td>
<td>Plumbing Waste Fittings.</td>
<td>424.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASME A112.19.2—2013/B45.1—2013</td>
<td>Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures</td>
<td>401.2, 405.9, 407.1, 408.1, 410.1, 415.1, 416.1, 417.1, 418.1, 419.1, 420.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASME A112.19.1—2013/CSA B45.2—2013</td>
<td>Enameled Cast-iron and Enameled Steel Plumbing Fixtures.</td>
<td>407.1, 410.1, 415.1, 416.1, 418.1, 420.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASME A112.19.3—2008/CSA B45.4—08(R2013)</td>
<td>Stainless-steel Plumbing Fixtures.</td>
<td>405.9, 407.1, 415.1, 416.1, 418.1, 420.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASME A112.19.5—2011/CSA B45.15—2011</td>
<td>Flush Valves and Spuds for Water Closets, Urinals and Tanks.</td>
<td>425.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASME A112.19.7—2012/CSA B45.10—2012</td>
<td>Hydromassage Bathtub Systems.</td>
<td>424.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASME A112.3.4—2013/CSA B45.9—2013</td>
<td>Plastic Plumbing Fixtures</td>
<td>407.1, 415.1, 416.1, 416.2, 417.1, 419.1, 420.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASME A112.1016/ASSE 1016/CSA B125.16—2011</td>
<td>Performance Requirements for Individual Thermostatic, Pressure Balancing and Combination Control Valves for Individual Fixture Fittings.</td>
<td>424.3, 424.4, 607.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.1.1—11</td>
<td>Vacuum Breakers, Atmospheric Type (AVB)</td>
<td>425.2, Table 608.1, 608.13.6, 608.16.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.1.2—11</td>
<td>Pressure Vacuum Breakers, (PVB)</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.1.3—11</td>
<td>Spill Resistant Pressure Vacuum Breakers (SRPVB)</td>
<td>608.13.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.2—11</td>
<td>Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection Type (HCVB)</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.2.1—11</td>
<td>Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection (HCVB) with Manual Draining Feature</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.2.1.1—11</td>
<td>Hose Connection Dual Check Vacuum Breakers, (HCDVB).</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.2.2—11</td>
<td>Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection Type (HCVB) with Automatic Draining Feature</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.3—11</td>
<td>Backflow Preventers, Dual Check Valve Type with</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.4—11</td>
<td>Backflow Preventers, Reduced Pressure Principle Type (RP)</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.2, 608.16.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.4.1—11</td>
<td>Reduced Pressure Principle for Fire Sprinklers (RFF)</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.5.1—11</td>
<td>Double Check Backflow Preventers (DCVA)</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.5.1—11</td>
<td>Double Check Valve Backflow Preventer for Fire Systems (DCVAF)</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.6—11</td>
<td>Dual Check Backflow Preventer Valve (DuC)</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.7—11</td>
<td>Laboratory Faucet Vacuum Breakers (LFVB)</td>
<td>Table 608.1, 608.13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.10—11</td>
<td>Manual for the Selection and Installation of Backflow Prevention Devices</td>
<td>312.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B64.10.1—11</td>
<td>Maintenance and Field Testing of Backflow Preventers</td>
<td>312.10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B79—08(R2013)</td>
<td>Commercial and Residential Drains, and Cleanouts.</td>
<td>420.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B125.3—2012</td>
<td>Plumbing Fittings</td>
<td>408.3, 416.5, 423.3, 424.4, 424.5, 425.2, 425.3.1, Table 605.7, Table 608.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# REFERENCED STANDARDS

## ISEA
International Safety Equipment Association  
1901 N. Moore Street, Suite 808  
Arlington, VA 22209

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/ISEA Z358.1—2009</td>
<td>Emergency Eyewash and Shower Equipment</td>
<td>411.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## MSS
Manufacturers Standardization Society Of the Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc.  
127 Park St. NE  
Vienna, VA 22180-4602

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SP-67—2011</td>
<td>Butterfly Valves</td>
<td>Table 605.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP-70—2011</td>
<td>Gray Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends</td>
<td>Table 605.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP-71—2011</td>
<td>Gray Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends</td>
<td>Table 605.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP-72—2010</td>
<td>Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-Welding Ends for General Service</td>
<td>Table 605.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP-78—2011</td>
<td>Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends</td>
<td>Table 605.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP-80—2008</td>
<td>Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves</td>
<td>Table 605.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP-110—2010</td>
<td>Ball Valves, Threaded, Socket Welded, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends</td>
<td>Table 605.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## NFPA
National Fire Protection Association  
1 Batterymarch Park  
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>51—13</td>
<td>Design and Installation of Oxygen-fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting and Allied Processes</td>
<td>1203.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55—13</td>
<td>Compressed Gases and Cryogenic Fluids Code</td>
<td>1203.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70—14</td>
<td>National Electric Code</td>
<td>502.1, 504.3, 1113.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99—15</td>
<td>Health Care Facilities Code</td>
<td>1202.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## NSF
NSF International  
789 Dixboro Road  
Ann Arbor, MI 48105

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3—2010</td>
<td>Commercial Warewashing Equipment</td>
<td>409.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14—2011</td>
<td>Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials</td>
<td>303.3, 611.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18—2012</td>
<td>Manual Food and Beverage Dispensing Equipment</td>
<td>426.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42—2011</td>
<td>Drinking Water Treatment Units-Aesthetic Effects</td>
<td>611.1, 611.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44—2012</td>
<td>Residential Cation Exchange Water Softeners</td>
<td>611.1, 611.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50—2012</td>
<td>Equipment for Swimming Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs and other Recreational Facilities</td>
<td>1302.8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53—2011a</td>
<td>Drinking Water Treatment Units—Health Effects</td>
<td>611.1, 611.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58—2012</td>
<td>Reverse Osmosis Drinking Water Treatment Systems</td>
<td>611.2, 611.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61—2012</td>
<td>Drinking Water System Components—Health Effects</td>
<td>410.1, 424.1, 605.3, 605.4, 605.5, 605.7, 611.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62—2012</td>
<td>Drinking Water Distillation Systems</td>
<td>611.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350—2011</td>
<td>Onsite Residential and Commercial Water Reuse Treatment Systems</td>
<td>1302.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>359—2011</td>
<td>Valves for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Water Distribution Tubing Systems</td>
<td>Table 605.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>372—2010</td>
<td>Drinking Water Systems Components—Lead Content</td>
<td>605.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard reference number</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Referenced in code section number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDI G101 (2012)</td>
<td>Testing and Rating Procedure for Grease Interceptors with Appendix of Sizing and Installation Data</td>
<td>1003.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDI G102 (2009)</td>
<td>Testing and Certification for Grease Interceptors with Fog Sensing and Alarm Devices</td>
<td>1003.3.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard reference number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Referenced in code section number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>58—1996</td>
<td>Steel Underground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids—</td>
<td>1302.7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142—2006</td>
<td>Steel Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids—</td>
<td>1302.7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>399—2008</td>
<td>Drinking-Water Coolers—</td>
<td>410.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430—2009</td>
<td>Waste Disposers—</td>
<td>413.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>508—99</td>
<td>Industrial Control Equipment—</td>
<td>314.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1316—1994</td>
<td>Glass-Fiber Reinforced Plastic Underground Storage Tanks for Petroleum Products, Alcohols and Alcohol Gasoline Mixtures—</td>
<td>1302.7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1746—2007</td>
<td>External Corrosion Protection Systems for Steel Underground Storage Tanks</td>
<td>1302.7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1795—2009</td>
<td>Hydromassage Bathtubs including revisions through August 23, 2011</td>
<td>421.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX A

PLUMBING PERMIT FEE SCHEDULE

Deleted.
APPENDIX B

RATES OF RAINFALL FOR VARIOUS CITIES

Deleted.
The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION C101
CUTTING, NOTCHING AND BORING IN WOOD MEMBERS

[BS] C101.1 Joist notching. Notches on the ends of joists shall not exceed one-fourth the joist depth. Holes bored in joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top or bottom of the joist, and the diameter of any such hole shall not exceed one-third the depth of the joist. Notches in the top or bottom of joists shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle third of the span.

[BS] C101.2 Stud cutting and notching. In exterior walls and bearing partitions, any wood stud is permitted to be cut or notched to a depth not exceeding 25 percent of its width. Cutting or notching of studs to a depth not greater than 40 percent of the width of the stud is permitted in nonbearing partitions supporting no loads other than the weight of the partition.

[BS] C101.3 Bored holes. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 40 percent of the stud depth. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 60 percent of the stud depth in nonbearing partitions. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 60 percent of the stud depth in any wall where each stud is doubled, provided that more than two such successive doubled studs are so bored. The edge of the bored hole shall not be closer than 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) to the edge of the stud. Bored holes shall be not located at the same section of stud as a cut or notch.

[BS] C101.4 Cutting, notching and boring holes in structural steel framing. The cutting, notching and boring of holes in structural steel framing members shall be as prescribed by the registered design professional.

[BS] C101.5 Cutting, notching and boring holes in cold-formed steel framing. Flanges and lips of load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall not be cut or notched. Holes in webs of load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member and shall not exceed the dimensional limitations, penetration spacing or minimum hole edge distance as prescribed by the registered design professional. Cutting, notching and boring holes of steel floor/roof decking shall be as prescribed by the registered design professional.

[BS] C101.6 Cutting, notching and boring holes in nonstructural cold-formed steel wall framing. Flanges and lips of nonstructural cold-formed steel wall studs shall not be cut or notched. Holes in webs of nonstructural cold-formed steel wall studs shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member, shall not exceed 1 inch (25 mm) in width or 4 inches (102 mm) in length, and the holes shall not be spaced less than 24 inches (610 mm) center to center from another hole or less than 10 inches (254 mm) from the bearing end.
APPENDIX D

DEGREE DAY AND DESIGN TEMPERATURES

Deleted.
APPENDIX E
SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

SECTION E101
GENERAL

E101.1 Scope.

E101.1.1 This appendix outlines two procedures for sizing a water piping system (see Sections E103.3 and E201.1). The design procedures are based on the minimum static pressure available from the supply source, the head changes in the system caused by friction and elevation, and the rates of flow necessary for operation of various fixtures.

E101.1.2 Because of the variable conditions encountered in hydraulic design, it is impractical to specify definite and detailed rules for sizing of the water piping system. Accordingly, other sizing or design methods conforming to good engineering practice standards are acceptable alternatives to those presented herein.

SECTION E102
INFORMATION REQUIRED

E102.1 Preliminary. Obtain the necessary information regarding the minimum daily static service pressure in the area where the building is to be located. If the building supply is to be metered, obtain information regarding friction loss relative to the rate of flow for meters in the range of sizes likely to be used. Friction loss data can be obtained from most manufacturers of water meters.

E102.2 Demand load.

E102.2.1 Estimate the supply demand of the building main and the principal branches and risers of the system by totaling the corresponding demand from the applicable part of Table E103.3(3).

E102.2.2 Estimate continuous supply demands in gallons per minute (L/m) for lawn sprinklers, air conditioners, etc., and add the sum to the total demand for fixtures. The result is the estimated supply demand for the building supply.

SECTION E103
SELECTION OF PIPE SIZE

E103.1 General. Decide from Table 604.3 what is the desirable minimum residual pressure that should be maintained at the highest fixture in the supply system. If the highest group of fixtures contains flushometer valves, the pressure for the group should be not less than 15 pounds per square inch (psi) (103.4 kPa) flowing. For flush tank supplies, the available pressure should be not less than 8 psi (55.2 kPa) flowing, except blowout action fixtures must be not less than 25 psi (172.4 kPa) flowing.

E103.2 Pipe sizing.

E103.2.1 Pipe sizes can be selected according to the following procedure or by other design methods conforming to acceptable engineering practice and approved by the administrative authority. The sizes selected must not be less than the minimum required by this code.

E103.2.2 Water pipe sizing procedures are based on a system of pressure requirements and losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the supply source. These pressures are as follows:

1. Pressure required at fixture to produce required flow. See Sections 604.3 and 604.5.
2. Static pressure loss or gain (due to head) is computed at 0.433 psi per foot (9.8 kPa/m) of elevation change.
3. Loss through water meter. The friction or pressure loss can be obtained from meter manufacturers.
4. Loss through taps in water main.
5. Losses through special devices such as filters, softeners, backflow prevention devices and pressure regulators. These values must be obtained from the manufacturers.
6. Loss through valves and fittings. Losses for these items are calculated by converting to equivalent length of piping and adding to the total pipe length.
7. Loss due to pipe friction can be calculated when the pipe size, the pipe length and the flow through the pipe are known. With these three items, the friction loss can be determined. For piping flow charts not included, use manufacturers’ tables and velocity recommendations.

Note: For the purposes of all examples, the following metric conversions are applicable:

- 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.4719 L/s
- 1 square foot = 0.0929 m²
- 1 degree = 0.0175 rad
- 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa
- 1 inch = 25.4 mm
- 1 foot = 304.8 mm
- 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m

Copyright © 2018 ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED, Accessed by Daniel Schaeffer (daniels@gojohns.com), 1 Order Number 388654644 on Jul 17, 2018 12:41:31 PM pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further reproduction or distribution authorized. Single use only, copying and networking prohibited. ANY UNAUTHORIZED REPRODUCTION OR DISTRIBUTION IS A VIOLATION OF THE FEDERAL COPYRIGHT ACT AND THE LICENSE AGREEMENT, AND SUBJECT TO CIVIL AND CRIMINAL PENALTIES THEREUNDER.
E103.3 Segmented loss method. The size of water service mains, branch mains and risers by the segmented loss method must be determined according to water supply demand [gpm (L/m)], available water pressure [psi (kPa)] and friction loss caused by the water meter and developed length of pipe [feet (m)], including equivalent length of fittings. This design procedure is based on the following parameters:

- Calculates the friction loss through each length of the pipe.
- Based on a system of pressure losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the street main or other source of supply.
- Pipe sizing based on estimated peak demand, total pressure losses caused by difference in elevation, equipment, developed length and pressure required at most remote fixture, loss through taps in water main, losses through fittings, filters, backflow prevention devices, valves and pipe friction.

Because of the variable conditions encountered in hydraulic design, it is impractical to specify definite and detailed rules for sizing of the water piping system. Current sizing methods do not address the differences in the probability of use and flow characteristics of fixtures between types of occupancies. Creating an exact model of predicting the demand for a building is impossible and final studies assessing the impact of water conservation on demand are not yet complete. The following steps are necessary for the segmented loss method.

1. **Preliminary.** Obtain the necessary information regarding the minimum daily static service pressure in the area where the building is to be located. If the building supply is to be metered, obtain information regarding friction loss relative to the rate of flow for meters in the range of sizes to be used. Friction loss data can be obtained from manufacturers of water meters. It is essential that enough pressure be available to overcome all system losses caused by friction and elevation so that plumbing fixtures operate properly. Section 604.6 requires the water distribution system to be designed for the minimum pressure available taking into consideration pressure fluctuations. The lowest pressure must be selected to guarantee a continuous, adequate supply of water. The lowest pressure in the public main usually occurs in the summer because of lawn sprinkling and supplying water for air-conditioning cooling towers. Future demands placed on the public main as a result of large growth or expansion should also be considered. The available pressure will decrease as additional loads are placed on the public system.

2. **Demand load.** Estimate the supply demand of the building main and the principal branches and risers of the system by totaling the corresponding demand from the applicable part of Table E103.3(3). When estimating peak demand sizing methods typically use water supply fixture units (w.s.f.u.) [see Table E103.3(2)]. This numerical factor measures the load-producing effect of a single plumbing fixture of a given kind. The use of such fixture units can be applied to a single basic probability curve (or table), found in the various sizing methods [Table E103.3(3)]. The fixture units are then converted into gallons per minute (L/m) flow rate for estimating demand.

3. **Selection of pipe size.** This water pipe sizing procedure is based on a system of pressure requirements and losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the supply source. These pressures are as follows:

   3.1. Pressure required at the fixture to produce required flow. See Sections 604.3 and 604.5.
   3.2. Static pressure loss or gain (because of head) is computed at 0.433 psi per foot (9.8 kPa/m) of elevation change.
   3.3. Loss through a water meter. The friction or pressure loss can be obtained from the manufacturer.
   3.4. Loss through taps in water main [see Table E103.3(4)].
   3.5. Losses through special devices such as filters, softeners, backflow prevention devices and pressure regulators. These values must be obtained from the manufacturers.
   3.6. Loss through valves and fittings [see Tables E103.3(5) and E103.3(6)]. Losses for these items are calculated by converting to equivalent length of piping and adding to the total pipe length.
   3.7. Loss caused by pipe friction can be calculated when the pipe size, the pipe length and the flow through the pipe are known. With these three items, the friction loss can be determined using Figures E103.3(2) through E103.3(7). When using charts, use pipe inside diameters. For piping flow charts not included, use manufacturers’ tables and velocity recommendations. Before attempting to size any water supply system, it is necessary to gather preliminary information that includes available pressure, piping material, select design velocity, elevation differences and developed length to most remote fixture. The water supply system is divided into sections at major changes in elevation or where branches lead to fixture groups. The peak demand must be determined in each part of the hot and cold water supply system which includes the corresponding water supply fixture unit and conversion to gallons per minute (L/m) flow rate to be expected through each section. Sizing methods...
require the determination of the “most hydraulically remote” fixture to compute the pressure loss caused by pipe and fittings. The hydraulically remote fixture represents the most downstream fixture along the circuit of piping requiring the most available pressure to operate properly. Consideration must be given to all pressure demands and losses, such as friction caused by pipe, fittings and equipment, elevation and the residual pressure required by Table 604.3. The two most common and frequent complaints about the water supply system operation are lack of adequate pressure and noise.

Problem: What size Type L copper water pipe, service and distribution will be required to serve a two-story factory building having on each floor, back-to-back, two toilet rooms each equipped with hot and cold water? The highest fixture is 21 feet (6401 mm) above the street main, which is tapped with a 2-inch (51 mm) corporation cock at which point the minimum pressure is 55 psi (379.2 kPa). In the building basement, a 2-inch (51 mm) meter with a maximum pressure drop of 11 psi (75.8 kPa) and 3-inch (76 mm) reduced pressure principle backflow preventer with a maximum pressure drop of 9 psi (621 kPa) are to be installed. The system is shown by Figure E103.3(1). To be determined are the pipe sizes for the service main and the cold and hot water distribution pipes.

Solution: A tabular arrangement such as shown in Table E103.3(1) should first be constructed. The steps to be followed are indicated by the tabular arrangement itself as they are in sequence, Columns 1 through 10 and Lines A through L.

Step 1

Columns 1 and 2: Divide the system into sections breaking at major changes in elevation or where branches lead to fixture groups. After point B [see Figure E103.3(1)], separate consideration will be given to the hot and cold water piping. Enter the sections to be considered in the service and cold water piping in Column 1 of the tabular arrangement. Column 1 of Table E103.3(1) provides a line-by-line recommended tabular arrangement for use in solving pipe sizing.

The objective in designing the water supply system is to ensure an adequate water supply and pressure to all fixtures and equipment. Column 2 provides the pounds per square inch (psi) to be considered separately from the minimum pressure available at the main. Losses to take into consideration are the following: the differences in elevation between the water supply source and the highest water supply outlet, meter pressure losses, the tap in main loss, special fixture devices such as water softeners and backflow prevention devices and the pressure required at the most remote fixture outlet. The difference in elevation can result in an increase or decrease in available pressure at the main. Where the water supply outlet is located above the source, this results in a loss in the available pressure and is subtracted from the pressure at the water source. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the water supply source, there will be an increase in pressure that is added to the available pressure of the water source.

Column 3: According to Table E103.3(3), determine the gpm (L/m) of flow to be expected in each section of the system. These flows range from 28.6 to 108 gpm. Load values for fixtures must be determined as water supply fixture units and then converted to a gallon-per-minute (gpm) rating to determine peak demand. When calculating peak demands, the water supply fixture units are added and then converted to the gallon-per-minute rating. For continuous flow fixtures such as hose bibbs and lawn sprinkler systems, add the gallon-per-minute demand to the intermittent demand of fixtures. For example, a total of 120 water supply fixture units is converted to a demand of 48 gallons per minute. Two hose bibbs × 5 gpm demand = 10 gpm. Total gpm rating = 48.0 gpm + 10 gpm = 58.0 gpm demand.

Step 2

Line A: Enter the minimum pressure available at the main source of supply in Column 2. This is 55 psi (379.2 kPa). The local water authorities generally keep records of pressures at different times of day and year. The available pressure can also be checked from nearby buildings or from fire department hydrant checks.

Line B: Determine from Table 604.3 the highest pressure required for the fixtures on the system, which is 15 psi (103.4 kPa), to operate a flushometer valve. The most remote fixture outlet is necessary to compute the pressure loss caused by pipe and fittings, and represents the most downstream fixture along the circuit of piping requiring the available pressure to operate properly as indicated by Table 604.3.

Line C: Determine the pressure loss for the meter size given or assumed. The total water flow from the main through the service as determined in Step 1 will serve to aid in the meter selected. There are three common types of water meters; the pressure losses are determined by the American Water Works Association Standards for displacement type, compound type and turbine type. The maximum pressure loss of such devices takes into consideration the meter size, safe operating capacity (gpm) and maximum rates for continuous operations (gpm). Typically, equipment imparts greater pressure losses than piping.

Line D: Select from Table E103.3(4) and enter the pressure loss for the tap size given or assumed. The loss of pressure through taps and tees in pounds per square inch (psi) is based on the total gallon-per-minute flow rate and size of the tap.

Line E: Determine the difference in elevation between the main and source of supply and the highest fixture on the system. Multiply this figure, expressed in feet, by 0.43 psi (2.9 kPa). Enter the resulting psi loss on Line E. The difference in elevation between the water supply source and the highest water supply outlet has a significant impact on the sizing of the water supply system. The difference in elevation usually results in a loss in the available pressure because the water supply outlet is generally located above the water supply source. The loss is caused by the pressure.
required to lift the water to the outlet. The pressure loss is subtracted from the pressure at the water source. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the water source, there will be an increase in pressure that is added to the available pressure of the water source.

Lines F, G and H: The pressure losses through filters, backflow prevention devices or other special fixtures must be obtained from the manufacturer or estimated and entered on these lines. Equipment such as backflow prevention devices, check valves, water softeners, instantaneous or tankless water heaters, filters and strainers can impart a much greater pressure loss than the piping. The pressure losses can range from 8 psi to 30 psi.

Step 3

Line I: The sum of the pressure requirements and losses that affect the overall system (Lines B through H) is entered on this line. Summarizing the steps, all of the system losses are subtracted from the minimum water pressure. The remainder is the pressure available for friction, defined as the energy available to push the water through the pipes to each fixture. This force can be used as an average pressure loss, as long as the pressure available for friction is not exceeded. Saving a certain amount for available water supply pressures as an area incurs growth, or because of aging of the pipe or equipment added to the system is recommended.

Step 4

Line J: Subtract Line I from Line A. This gives the pressure that remains available from overcoming friction losses in the system. This figure is a guide to the pipe size that is chosen for each section, incorporating the total friction losses to the most remote outlet (measured length is called developed length).

Exception: When the main is above the highest fixture, the resulting psi must be considered a pressure gain (static head gain) and omitted from the sums of Lines B through H and added to Line J.

The maximum friction head loss that can be tolerated in the system during peak demand is the difference between the static pressure at the highest and most remote outlet at no-flow conditions and the minimum flow pressure required at that outlet. If the losses are within the required limits, then every run of pipe will also be within the required friction head loss. Static pressure loss is the most remote outlet in feet × 0.433 = loss in psi caused by elevation differences.

Step 5

Column 4: Enter the length of each section from the main to the most remote outlet (at Point E). Divide the water supply system into sections breaking at major changes in elevation or where branches lead to fixture groups.

Step 6

E103.3.3. Selection of pipe size, Step 6 Column 5: When selecting a trial pipe size, the length from the water service or meter to the most remote fixture outlet must be measured to determine the developed length. However, in systems having a flushometer valve or temperature controlled shower at the topmost floors the developed length would be from the water meter to the most remote flushometer valve on the system. A rule of thumb is that size will become progressively smaller as the system extends farther from the main source of supply. Trial pipe size may be arrived at by the following formula:

Line J: (Pressure available to overcome pipe friction) × 100/equivalent length of run total developed length to most remote fixture × percentage factor of 1.5 (note: a percentage factor is used only as an estimate for friction losses imposed for fittings for initial trial pipe size) = psi (average pressure drops per 100 feet of pipe).

For trial pipe size, see Figure E 103.3(3) (Type L copper) based on 2.77 psi and a 108 gpm = 21/2 inches. To determine the equivalent length of run to the most remote outlet, the developed length is determined and added to the friction losses for fittings and valves. The developed lengths of the designated pipe sections are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A - B</th>
<th>54 ft</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B - C</td>
<td>8 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C - D</td>
<td>13 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D - E</td>
<td>150 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total developed length</td>
<td>225 ft</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The equivalent length of the friction loss in fittings and valves must be added to the developed length (most remote outlet). Where the size of fittings and valves is not known, the added friction loss should be approximated. A general rule that has been used is to add 50 percent of the developed length to allow for fittings and valves. For example, the equivalent length of run equals the developed length of run (225 ft × 1.5 = 338 ft). The total equivalent length of run for determining a trial pipe size is 338 feet.

Example: 9.36 (pressure available to overcome pipe friction) × 100/338 (equivalent length of run = 225 × 1.5) = 2.77 psi (average pressure drop per 100 feet of pipe).

Step 7

Column 6: Select from Table E103.3(6) the equivalent lengths for the trial pipe size of fittings and valves on each pipe section. Enter the sum for each section in Column 6. (The number of fittings to be used in this example must be an estimate.) The equivalent length of piping is the developed length plus the equivalent lengths of pipe corresponding to friction head losses for fittings and valves. Where the size of fittings and valves is not known, the added friction head losses must be approximated. An estimate for this example is found in Table E.1.

Step 8

Column 7: Add the figures from Column 4 and Column 6, and enter in Column 7. Express the sum in hundreds of feet.
Step 9
Column 8: Select from Figure E103.3(3) the friction loss per 100 feet (30 480 mm) of pipe for the gallon-per-minute flow in a section (Column 3) and trial pipe size (Column 5). Maximum friction head loss per 100 feet is determined on the basis of total pressure available for friction head loss and the longest equivalent length of run. The selection is based on the gallon-per-minute demand, the uniform friction head loss and the maximum design velocity. Where the size indicated by hydraulic table indicates a velocity in excess of the selected velocity, a size must be selected that produces the required velocity.

Step 10
Column 9: Multiply the figures in Columns 7 and 8 for each section and enter in Column 9. Total friction loss is determined by multiplying the friction loss per 100 feet (30 480 mm) for each pipe section in the total developed length by the pressure loss in fittings expressed as equivalent length in feet. Note: Section C-F should be considered in the total pipe friction losses only if greater loss occurs in Section C-F than in pipe section D-E. Section C-F is not considered in the total developed length. Total friction loss in equivalent length is determined in Table E.2.

Step 11
Line K: Enter the sum of the values in Column 9. The value is the total friction loss in equivalent length for each designated pipe section.

Step 12
Line L: Subtract Line J from Line K and enter in Column 10. The result should always be a positive or plus figure. If it is not, repeat the operation using Columns 5, 6, 8 and 9 until a balance or near balance is obtained. If the difference between Lines J and K is a high positive number, it is an indication that the pipe sizes are too large and should be reduced, thus saving materials. In such a case, the operations using Columns 5, 6, 8 and 9 should again be repeated.

The total friction losses are determined and subtracted from the pressure available to overcome pipe friction for trial pipe size. This number is critical as it provides a guide to whether the pipe size selected is too large and the process should be repeated to obtain an economically designed system.

Answer: The final figures entered in Column 5 become the design pipe size for the respective sections. Repeating this operation a second time using the same sketch but considering the demand for hot water, it is possible to size the hot water distribution piping. This has been worked up as a part of the overall problem in the tabular arrangement used for sizing the service and water distribution piping. Note that consideration must be given to the pressure losses from the street main to the water heater (Section A-B) in determining the hot water pipe sizes.

### TABLE E.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLD WATER PIPE SECTION</th>
<th>FITTINGS/VALVES</th>
<th>PRESSURE LOSS EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT LENGTH OF TUBE (feet)</th>
<th>HOT WATER PIPE SECTION</th>
<th>FITTINGS/VALVES</th>
<th>PRESSURE LOSS EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT LENGTH OF TUBE (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A-B</td>
<td>3-2(\frac{1}{2})″ Gate valves</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>A-B</td>
<td>3-2(\frac{1}{2})″ Gate valves</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-2(\frac{1}{2})″ Side branch tee</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td>1-2(\frac{1}{2})″ Side branch tee</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-C</td>
<td>1-2(\frac{1}{2})″ Straight run tee</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>B-C</td>
<td>1-2″ Straight run tee</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1-2″ 90-degree ell</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-F</td>
<td>1-2(\frac{1}{2})″ Side branch tee</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>C-F</td>
<td>1-1(\frac{1}{2})″ Side branch tee</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-D</td>
<td>1-2(\frac{1}{2})″ 90-degree ell</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>C-D</td>
<td>1-1(\frac{1}{2})″ 90-degree ell</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D-E</td>
<td>1-2(\frac{1}{2})″ Side branch tee</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>D-E</td>
<td>1-1(\frac{1}{2})″ Side branch tee</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

### TABLE E.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIPE SECTIONS</th>
<th>FRICTION LOSS EQUIVALENT LENGTH (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cold Water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-B</td>
<td>0.69 × 3.2 = 2.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-C</td>
<td>0.085 × 3.1 = 0.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-D</td>
<td>0.20 × 1.9 = 0.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D-E</td>
<td>1.62 × 1.9 = 3.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total pipe friction losses (Line K)</td>
<td>5.93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m.
For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m.

FIGURE E103.3(1)
EXAMPLE-SIZING
TABLE E103.3(1)
RECOMMENDED TABULAR ARRANGEMENT FOR USE IN SOLVING PIPE SIZING PROBLEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Line</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Lb per square inch (psi)</td>
<td>Gal. per min through section</td>
<td>Length of section (feet)</td>
<td>Trial pipe size (inches)</td>
<td>Equivalent length of fittings and valves (feet)</td>
<td>Total equivalent length col. 4 and col. 6 (100 feet)</td>
<td>Friction loss per 100 feet of trial pipe size (psi)</td>
<td>Friction loss in equivalent length col. 8 x col. 7 (psi)</td>
<td>Excess pressure over friction losses (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Minimum pressure available at main .............................................. 55.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Highest pressure required at a fixture (Table 604.3) .......................... 15.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Meter loss 2&quot; meter .............................................................. 11.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Tap in main loss 2&quot; tap (Table E103.3(4)) ....................................... 1.61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Service and cold water distribution piping* ......................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Static head loss 21 x 43 psi ..................................................... 9.03</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Special fixture loss backflow preventer ......................................... 9.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Special fixture loss—Filter ..................................................... 0.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Special fixture loss—Other ..................................................... 0.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Total overall losses and requirements (Sum of Lines B through H) ............... 45.64</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Pressure available to overcome pipe friction (Line A minus Lines B to H) ............. 9.36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Total pipe friction losses (cold) ..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Difference (Line J minus Line K) ..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Pipe section (from diagram) ..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Diagram ..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Hot water ..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Distribution ..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Piping ..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Total pipe friction losses (hot) ..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Difference (Line J minus Line K) ..................................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m.
a. To be considered as pressure gain for fixtures below main (to consider separately, omit from “I” and add to “J”).
b. To consider separately, in K use C-F only if greater loss than above.
## APPENDIX E

### TABLE E103.3(2)

**LOAD VALUES ASSIGNED TO FIXTURES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIXTURE</th>
<th>OCCUPANCY</th>
<th>TYPE OF SUPPLY CONTROL</th>
<th>LOAD VALUES, IN WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNITS (wsfu)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathroom group</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Flush tank</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathroom group</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Flusometer valve</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathtub</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Faucet</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathtub</td>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Faucet</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bidet</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Faucet</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination fixture</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Faucet</td>
<td>2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dishwashing machine</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Automatic</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking fountain</td>
<td>Offices, etc.</td>
<td>1/8&quot; valve</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitchen sink</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Faucet</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitchen sink</td>
<td>Hotel, restaurant</td>
<td>Faucet</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laundry trays (1 to 3)</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Faucet</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavatory</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Faucet</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavatory</td>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Faucet</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service sink</td>
<td>Offices, etc.</td>
<td>Faucet</td>
<td>2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shower head</td>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Mixing valve</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shower head</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Mixing valve</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinal</td>
<td>Public</td>
<td>1/2&quot; flushometer valve</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinal</td>
<td>Public</td>
<td>1/2&quot; flushometer valve</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinal</td>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Flush tank</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washing machine (8 lb)</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Automatic</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washing machine (8 lb)</td>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Automatic</td>
<td>2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washing machine (15 lb)</td>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Automatic</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Flusometer valve</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet</td>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Flush tank</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet</td>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Flusometer valve</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet</td>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Flush tank</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water closet</td>
<td>Public or private</td>
<td>Flusometer tank</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. For fixtures not listed, loads should be assumed by comparing the fixture to one listed using water in similar quantities and at similar rates. The assigned loads for fixtures with both hot and cold water supplies are given for separate hot and cold water loads and for total load. The separate hot and cold water loads being three-fourths of the total load for the fixture in each case.
### TABLE E103.3(3)
**TABLE FOR ESTIMATING DEMAND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Load (Water supply fixture units)</th>
<th>Demand (Gallons per minute)</th>
<th>Supply Systems Predominantly for Flush Tanks</th>
<th>Demand (Cubic feet per minute)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>0.04104</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>0.0684</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>0.86892</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>1.06944</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>1.25659</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>1.430376</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>1.577424</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>1.711104</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>13.7</td>
<td>1.831416</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>14.6</td>
<td>1.951728</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>2.058672</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>2.13888</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>2.20572</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>17.0</td>
<td>2.27256</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>2.3394</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>18.0</td>
<td>2.90624</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>18.4</td>
<td>2.459712</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>18.8</td>
<td>2.513184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>2.566656</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>19.6</td>
<td>2.620128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>21.5</td>
<td>2.87412</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>23.3</td>
<td>3.114744</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>24.9</td>
<td>3.32832</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>26.3</td>
<td>3.515784</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>27.7</td>
<td>3.702936</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>29.1</td>
<td>3.890088</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>32.0</td>
<td>4.27776</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>35.0</td>
<td>4.6788</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>38.0</td>
<td>5.07984</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>41.0</td>
<td>5.48088</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>43.5</td>
<td>5.81508</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>48.0</td>
<td>6.41664</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>52.5</td>
<td>7.0182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>57.0</td>
<td>7.61976</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>61.0</td>
<td>8.15448</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>65.0</td>
<td>8.6892</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225</td>
<td>70.0</td>
<td>9.3576</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>75.0</td>
<td>10.026</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE E103.3(3)-continued

**SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH TANKS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Load (Water supply fixture units)</th>
<th>Demand (Gallons per minute)</th>
<th>Demand (Cubic feet per minute)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>275</td>
<td>80.0</td>
<td>10.6944</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>85.0</td>
<td>11.3628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>105.0</td>
<td>14.0364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>124.0</td>
<td>16.57632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>750</td>
<td>170.0</td>
<td>22.7256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>208.0</td>
<td>27.80544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,250</td>
<td>239.0</td>
<td>31.94952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,500</td>
<td>269.0</td>
<td>35.95992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,750</td>
<td>297.0</td>
<td>39.70296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>325.0</td>
<td>43.446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,500</td>
<td>380.0</td>
<td>50.7984</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>433.0</td>
<td>57.88344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>525.0</td>
<td>70.182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>593.0</td>
<td>79.27224</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSHOMETER VALVES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Load (Water supply fixture units)</th>
<th>Demand (Gallons per minute)</th>
<th>Demand (Cubic feet per minute)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>275</td>
<td>104.5</td>
<td>13.96956</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>108.0</td>
<td>14.43744</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>127.0</td>
<td>16.97736</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>143.0</td>
<td>19.11624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>750</td>
<td>177.0</td>
<td>23.66136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>208.0</td>
<td>27.80544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,250</td>
<td>239.0</td>
<td>31.94952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,500</td>
<td>269.0</td>
<td>35.95992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,750</td>
<td>297.0</td>
<td>39.70296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>325.0</td>
<td>43.446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,500</td>
<td>380.0</td>
<td>50.7984</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>433.0</td>
<td>57.88344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>525.0</td>
<td>70.182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>593.0</td>
<td>79.27224</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.28 m³ per minute.

### TABLE E103.3(4)

**LOSS OF PRESSURE THROUGH TAPS AND TEES IN POUNDS PER SQUARE INCH (psi)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gallons per minute</th>
<th>( \frac{1}{4} ) in</th>
<th>( \frac{1}{2} ) in</th>
<th>( \frac{3}{4} ) in</th>
<th>( \frac{1}{3} ) in</th>
<th>( \frac{1}{2} ) in</th>
<th>( \frac{1}{2} ) in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>5.38</td>
<td>2.54</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>12.10</td>
<td>5.72</td>
<td>1.62</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10.20</td>
<td>3.07</td>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>0.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>15.90</td>
<td>4.49</td>
<td>1.92</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>6.46</td>
<td>2.76</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>8.79</td>
<td>3.76</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>11.50</td>
<td>4.90</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>14.50</td>
<td>6.21</td>
<td>2.94</td>
<td>0.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>17.94</td>
<td>7.67</td>
<td>3.63</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>25.80</td>
<td>11.00</td>
<td>5.23</td>
<td>1.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>35.20</td>
<td>15.00</td>
<td>7.12</td>
<td>2.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>17.20</td>
<td>8.16</td>
<td>2.52</td>
<td>0.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>19.60</td>
<td>9.30</td>
<td>2.92</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>24.80</td>
<td>11.80</td>
<td>3.62</td>
<td>0.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>30.70</td>
<td>14.50</td>
<td>4.48</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>38.80</td>
<td>18.40</td>
<td>5.60</td>
<td>1.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>47.90</td>
<td>22.70</td>
<td>7.00</td>
<td>1.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>275</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>27.40</td>
<td>7.70</td>
<td>1.59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>32.60</td>
<td>10.10</td>
<td>1.88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kpa, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.
### TABLE E103.3(5)
**ALLOWANCE IN EQUIVALENT LENGTHS OF PIPE FOR FRICTION LOSS IN VALVES AND THREADED FITTINGS (feet)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FITTING OR VALVE</th>
<th>PIPE SIZE (inches)</th>
<th>1/8</th>
<th>1/4</th>
<th>1/2</th>
<th>3/4</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1 1/2</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>2 1/2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>45-degree elbow</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90-degree elbow</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tee, run</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tee, branch</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gate valve</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balancing valve</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plug-type cock</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check valve, swing</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>16.8</td>
<td>22.4</td>
<td>28.0</td>
<td>33.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Globe valve</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>35.0</td>
<td>45.0</td>
<td>55.0</td>
<td>65.0</td>
<td>80.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angle valve</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>18.0</td>
<td>22.0</td>
<td>28.0</td>
<td>34.0</td>
<td>40.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

### TABLE E103.3(6)
**PRESSURE LOSS IN FITTINGS AND VALVES EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT LENGTH OF TUBE** (feet)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOMINAL OR STANDARD SIZE (inches)</th>
<th>FITTINGS</th>
<th>VALVES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Standard Ell</td>
<td>90-Degree Tee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/8</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/8</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1/2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1/2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

a. Allowances are for streamlined soldered fittings and recessed threaded fittings. For threaded fittings, double the allowances shown in the table. The equivalent lengths presented above are based on a C factor of 150 in the Hazen-Williams friction loss formula. The lengths shown are rounded to the nearest half-foot.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.

FIGURE E103.3(2)
FRICITION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE* (TYPE K, ASTM B 88 COPPER TUBING)
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.
a. This chart applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.

**FIGURE E103.3(3)**
FRICITION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE° (TYPE L, ASTM B 88 COPPER TUBING)

Note: Fluid velocities in excess of 5 to 8 feet/second are not usually recommended.
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.

FIGURE E103.3(4)
FRICITION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE* (TYPE M, ASTM B 88 COPPER TUBING)
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to smooth new steel (fairly smooth) pipe and to actual diameters of standard-weight pipe.

**FIGURE E103.3(5)**
**FRICION LOSS IN FAIRLY SMOOTH PIPE**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to fairly rough pipe and to actual diameters which in general will be less than the actual diameters of the new pipe of the same kind.

FIGURE E103.3(6)
FRICITION LOSS IN FAIRLY ROUGH PIPE*
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to very rough pipe and existing pipe and to their actual diameters.

**FIGURE E103.3(7)**

*FRICION LOSS IN ROUGH PIPE*
SECTION E201
SELECTION OF PIPE SIZE

E201.1 Size of water service mains, branch mains and risers. The minimum size water service pipe shall be 3/4 inch (19.1 mm). The size of water service mains, branch mains and risers shall be determined according to water supply demand [gpm (L/m)], available water pressure [psi (kPa)] and friction loss due to the water meter and developed length of pipe [feet (m)], including equivalent length of fittings. The size of each water distribution system shall be determined according to the procedure outlined in this section or by other design methods conforming to acceptable engineering practice and approved by the code official:

1. Supply load in the building water distribution system shall be determined by total load on the pipe being sized, in terms of water-supply fixture units (w.s.f.u.), as shown in Table E103.3(2). For fixtures not listed, choose a w.s.f.u. value of a fixture with similar flow characteristics.

2. Obtain the minimum daily static service pressure [psi (kPa)] available (as determined by the local water authority) at the water meter or other source of supply at the installation location. Adjust this minimum daily static pressure [psi (kPa)] for the following conditions:
   2.1. Determine the difference in elevation between the source of supply and the highest water supply outlet. Where the highest water supply outlet is located above the source of supply, deduct 0.5 psi (3.4 kPa) for each foot (0.3 m) of difference in elevation. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the source of supply, add 0.5 psi (3.4 kPa) for each foot (0.3 m) of difference in elevation.
   2.2. Where a water pressure-reducing valve is installed in the water distribution system, the minimum daily static water pressure available is 80 percent of the minimum daily static water pressure at the source of supply or the set pressure downstream of the pressure-reducing valve, whichever is smaller.
   2.3. Deduct all pressure losses due to special equipment such as a backflow preventer, water filter and water softener. Pressure loss data for each piece of equipment shall be obtained through the manufacturer of such devices.
   2.4. Deduct the pressure in excess of 8 psi (55 kPa) due to installation of the special plumbing fixture, such as temperature controlled shower and flushometer tank water closet. Using the resulting minimum available pressure, find the corresponding pressure range in Table E201.1.

3. The maximum developed length for water piping is the actual length of pipe between the source of supply and the most remote fixture, including either hot (through the water heater) or cold water branches multiplied by a factor of 1.2 to compensate for pressure loss through fittings. Select the appropriate column in Table E201.1 equal to or greater than the calculated maximum developed length.

4. To determine the size of water service pipe, meter and main distribution pipe to the building using the appropriate table, follow down the selected “maximum developed length” column to a fixture unit equal to, or greater than the total installation demand calculated by using the “combined” water supply fixture unit column of Table E103.3(2). Read the water service pipe and meter sizes in the first left-hand column and the main distribution pipe to the building in the second left-hand column on the same row.

5. To determine the size of each water distribution pipe, start at the most remote outlet on each branch (either hot or cold branch) and, working back toward the main distribution pipe to the building, add up the water supply fixture unit demand passing through each segment of the distribution system using the related hot or cold column of Table E103.3(2). Knowing demand, the size of each segment shall be read from the second left-hand column of the same table and maximum developed length column selected in Steps 1 and 2, under the same or next smaller size meter row. In no case does the size of any branch or main need to be larger than the size of the main distribution pipe to the building established in Step 4.

SECTION E202
DETERMINATION OF PIPE VOLUMES

E202.1 Determining volume of piping systems. Where required for engineering design purposes, Table E202.1 shall be used to determine the approximate internal volume of water distribution piping.
### TABLE E201.1
**MINIMUM SIZE OF WATER METERS, MAINS AND DISTRIBUTION PIPING**
**BASED ON WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNIT VALUES (w.s.f.u.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>METER AND SERVICE PIPE (inches)</th>
<th>DISTRIBUTION PIPE (inches)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pressure Range 30 to 39 psi</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>2.5 2 1.5 1.5 1 1 0.5 0.5 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>9.5 7.5 6 5.5 4 3.5 3 2.5 2 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>32 25 20 16.5 11 9 7.8 6.5 5.5 4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>32 32 27 21 13.5 10 8 7 5.5 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>32 32 32 32 30 24 20 17 13 10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>80 80 70 61 45 34 27 22 16 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>80 80 80 75 54 40 31 25 17.5 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>87 87 87 87 84 73 64 56 45 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>151 151 151 151 117 92 79 69 54 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>151 151 151 151 128 99 83 72 56 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>87 87 87 87 87 87 87 87 87 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>365 365 365 365 318 266 229 201 160 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>533 533 533 533 495 448 409 353 311</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### TABLE E201.1—continued

**MINIMUM SIZE OF WATER METERS, MAINS AND DISTRIBUTION PIPING BASED ON WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNIT VALUES (w.s.f.u.)**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- Minimum size for building supply is 3/4-inch pipe.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>METER AND SERVICE PIPE (inches)</th>
<th>DISTRIBUTION PIPE (inches)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¹/₄</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¹/₃</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¹/₂</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¹/₄</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1′ /₂</td>
<td>1′ /₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1′ /₂</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2′ /₄</td>
<td>533</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>METER AND SERVICE PIPE (inches)</th>
<th>DISTRIBUTION PIPE (inches)</th>
<th>MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¹/₄</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¹/₃</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¹/₂</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¹/₄</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
<td>1′ /₄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1′ /₂</td>
<td>1′ /₂</td>
<td>1′ /₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1′ /₂</td>
<td>1′ /₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1′ /₂</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2′ /₄</td>
<td>533</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Minimum size for building supply is 7/₄-inch pipe.
### TABLE E202.1
INTERNAL VOLUME OF VARIOUS WATER DISTRIBUTION TUBING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size Nominal, Inch</th>
<th>Copper Type M</th>
<th>Copper Type L</th>
<th>Copper Type K</th>
<th>CPVC CTS SDR 11</th>
<th>CPVC SCH 40</th>
<th>CPVC SCH 80</th>
<th>PE-RT SDR 9</th>
<th>Composite ASTM F 1281</th>
<th>PEX CTS SDR 9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3/8</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1.69</td>
<td>1.55</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.89</td>
<td>1.46</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>1.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/4</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>3.22</td>
<td>2.90</td>
<td>2.67</td>
<td>3.38</td>
<td>2.74</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>3.39</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5.81</td>
<td>5.49</td>
<td>5.17</td>
<td>4.43</td>
<td>5.53</td>
<td>4.57</td>
<td>3.91</td>
<td>5.56</td>
<td>3.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/4</td>
<td>8.70</td>
<td>8.36</td>
<td>8.09</td>
<td>6.61</td>
<td>9.66</td>
<td>8.24</td>
<td>5.81</td>
<td>8.49</td>
<td>5.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>12.18</td>
<td>11.83</td>
<td>11.45</td>
<td>9.22</td>
<td>13.20</td>
<td>11.38</td>
<td>8.09</td>
<td>13.88</td>
<td>8.09</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SI: 1 ounce = 0.030 liter.
INDEX

ABS PIPE
Approved standards .......................... Table 605.3, Table 605.5, Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.7
Support ........................................ Table 308.5
ACCESS TO
Air admittance valve .......................... .918.5
Appliances ................................. 502.5
Backflow preventers ................... .608.14
Backwater valve ............................... .715.5
Cleanouts .......................... 708.1.10, 708.4, 708.9, 1103.4, 1301.8
Filters .................................. 1302.5, 1302.9, 1303.8, 1303.12
Fixtures .................................... 405.2
Flexible water connectors .................. .606.6
Floor drain .................................. 412.2
Flush tank components ..................... 425.3.4
Grease removal devices ................. 1003.3.5
Interceptors and separators ............ 1003.5, 1003.10
Manifolds .................................. 604.10.3
Piping ...................................... 422.5, 422.9.1
Plumbing fixtures ......................... 405.2
Pumps ........................................ 602.3.5, 1302.9, 1302.12
Reservoir or interior ...................... 1301.9.7
Roof washers .................................. 1303.4
Shower compartment ...................... 417.4.2
Slip joints .................................. 405.8
Standpipes .................................. 802.3.3
Sump ........................................... 712.3.2
Vacuum breakers .......................... 425.2
Vacuum station ............................. .713.4
Valves ...................................... 503.1, 604.11, 606.3, 712.2, 715.5, 918.5, 1302.8.1, 1302.9, 1303.12
Waste receptors ............................. 802.3
Water heaters .................................. 502.3, 502.5
Whirlpool pump ............................. 421.5
ACCESSIBLE PLUMBING FACILITIES
Clearances .................................. 404.2
Protection required .................. 404.3
Route ........................................ 403.5
Signs ........................................ 403.4
Where required .......................... 404.1
ADMINISTRATION
Applicability .................................. 102
Approval ..................................... 105, 106.5.7, 107.5
Inspections ................................ 107
AIR ADMITTANCE VALVES
Chemical waste ............................ .901.3
Definition ................................. 202
Where permitted .......................... 903.4, 905.1, 917.6, 918
AIR BREAK
Definition ................................. 202
Method of providing ................... 802.1.5, 802.1.6, 802.1.7, 802.1.8, 802.2
Required .................................. 406.2, 802.1.2, 802.1.5, 802.3.3
AIR GAP
Annual inspection of ..................... 312.10.1
Application of .............................. Table 608.1
Bidet ........................................ 408.2
Clothes washer ............................. 406.1
Definition ................................. 202
Dishwasher .................................. 409.2
Method of providing ................... 608.15.1, 802.2.1
Required ................................. 413.4, 414.1, 506.4, 606.5.6, 608.3.1, 608.9, 608.13.1, 608.13.3, 608.13.9, 608.14.2.1, 608.15.1, 608.16.1, 608.16.2, 608.16.4.1, 608.16.10, 609.7, 611.2, 723.6, 802.1, 802.1.1, 802.1.2, 802.1.3, 802.1.4, 802.1.5, 802.1.6, 802.1.7, 802.1.8, 802.2, 802.2.1
AIR TEST
.......................... 312.3, 312.5, 312.8
ALTERNATIVE ENGINEERED DESIGN
Definition ................................. 202
Requirements for ....................... 316
Special inspections of .................. 107.3
ALTERNATE ON-SITE NONPOTABLE WATER
Definition ................................. 202
ALTERATIONS AND REPAIRS .......................... 102.4, 307.4, 612.1
ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT .......................... 105.2
APPROVED
Definition ................................. 202
ATMOSPHERIC VACUUM BREAKER .......................... 424.8, Table 608.1, 608.13.6, 608.15.4, 608.15.4.2, 608.16.4.1, 608.16.5
AUTOMATIC CLOTHES WASHER .......................... 301.3, Table 403.1, 406, 412.4, 608.15.4.2, Table 709.1, 1002.4, 1003.6, 1302.2

2018 NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE

Copyright © 2018 ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by David Schaeffer (david@pyshma.com). 13 Order Number w1634644 on 17 July 2018 12:42:31 PM pursuant to License Agreement with IIC. No further reproduction or distribution authorized. Single user only, copying and networking prohibited. ANY UNAUTHORIZED REPRODUCTION OR DISTRIBUTION IS A VIOLATION OF THE FEDERAL COPYRIGHT ACT AND THE LICENSE AGREEMENT, AND SUBJECT TO CIVIL AND CRIMINAL PENALTIES THEREUNDER.
INDEX

B

| BACKFILLING ........................................... 306.3 |
| BACKFLOW PREVENTER |
| Definition ............................................ 202 |
| Required ............................................. 608.1 |
| Standards ............................................. Table 608.1 |
| Testing ............................................... 312.10.2 |
| BACKFLOW PROTECTION ................................. 608.1 |
| BACKWATER VALVES |
| Where required ...................................... 715 |
| BALL COCK (see FILL VALVE) ........................ 608.13.4 |
| BAROMETRIC LOOP .................................... 407 |
| BATHTUBS ............................................. 202 |
| BEDPAN STEAMERS .................................... 202 |
| BEDPAN WASHERS ...................................... 202 |
| BIDETS ............................................... 408 |
| BOOSTER SYSTEM .................................... 606.5 |
| BOTTLING ESTABLISHMENT ......................... 1003.7 |
| BRASS PIPE |
| Approved standards ................................. Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.8, Table 702.1 |
| BUILDING DRAIN |
| Branches of .......................................... Table 710.1(2) |
| Definition .......................................... 202 |
| Material .............................................. Table 702.1, Table 702.2 |
| Sizing ................................................ Table 710.1(1) |
| BUILDING DRAINAGE SYSTEMS ....................... 712.1 |
| Below sewer level .................................. 712.1 |
| BUILDING SEWER |
| Definition .......................................... 202 |
| Material .............................................. Table 702.3 |
| Sizing ................................................ Table 710.1(1) |
| BUILDING SYSTEMS |
| Connection to public sewer ...................... 701.2 |
| BUILDING TRAPS .................................... 1002.6 |

C

| CAST-IRON PIPE |
| Approved standards ................................. Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4 |
| CAULKING FERRULES ................................ 705.18 |
| CHANGE IN DIRECTION OF DRAINAGE ............... Table 706.3 |
| CHEMICAL WASTE |
| Exclusion from the sewer ................................ 803.2 |
| Neutralizing .......................................... 803.1 |
| Requirements ........................................ 702.6 |
| System venting ..................................... 901.3 |
| CIRCUIT VENT ........................................ 914 |

CIRCUIT VENT ........................................ 914

CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM ............... 202

CLAY PIPE .............................................. Table 702.3

CLEANOUTS |
| Building drain ....................................... 708.3.1.1 |
| Change of direction .................................. 708.1.4 |
| Clearances ............................................. 708.1.9 |
| Condensate drain .................................... 314.2.5 |
| Definition ............................................. 202 |
| Direction of flow .................................... 708.1.8 |
| Floor accessed ....................................... 708.1.10.2 |
| Horizontal drains ................................... 708.1.1 |
| Location of ............................................. 708.1.10 |
| Manholes .............................................. 708.1.1, 708.1.2, 708.1.7 |
| On stacks ............................................... 708.1.5 |
| Plugs, materials for .................................. 708.1.6 |
| Prohibited use of ...................................... 708.1.11 |
| Sewers .................................................. 708.1.2 |
| Size ..................................................... 708.1.5 |
| Trim covers for plugs ............................... 708.1.10.1 |
| Where required ........................................ 708.1 |

CLEARANCES ............................................. 502.5

CLEAR WATER WASTE ............................... 802.1.5

CODE OFFICIAL |
| Application for permit ................................ 106.3 |
| Appointment ............................................. 103.2 |
| Definition ............................................. 202 |
| Department records .................................. 104.7 |
| Duties and powers ..................................... 104 |
| General .................................................. 104.1 |
| Identification ......................................... 104.5 |
| Inspections ............................................. 107 |

COLLECTION PIPE .................................... 202

COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEM .... 915

COMBINED BUILDING DRAIN ....................... 202

COMMON VENT ......................................... 202, 911

COMPARTMENTS ....................................... 405.3.1, 405.3.4

CONCRETE PIPE |
| Where permitted ........................................ Table 702.3 |

CONDENSATE DRAINS |
| Cleanouts ............................................... 314.2.5 |
| Piping material ........................................ 314.2.2 |
| Mini-split systems ..................................... 314.2.4.1 |
| Traps ....................................................... 314.2.4 |

CONDUCTOR ............................................. 202

CONFLICTS ............................................. 301.7

CONNECTION TO PLUMBING SYSTEM |
| REQUIRED .............................................. 701.2 |
| CONNECTION TO SUMPS AND EJECTORS |
| Below sewer level ..................................... 712.1 |
### CONSERVATION, WATER AND ENERGY
- **Fixtures** ............................................ 604.4
- **Flow rates** ........................................ Table 604.3
- **Insulation** ......................................... 505, 607.5

### CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS ............................................. 106.3.1
### CONTROLLED FLOW STORM DRAINAGE .................................. 1110
### COPPER OR COPPER-ALLOY PIPE OR TUBING
- Approved standards ................................ Table 605.3, Table 605.4

### CPVC PIPE OR TUBING
- Approved standards ................................ Table 605.3, Table 605.4

### CROSS CONNECTIONS .................................................. 608
### CUTTING OR NOTCHING, STRUCTURAL MEMBERS .......................... 307.2, 307.4, Appendix C

### DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM
- **Definition** ........................................... 202
- **Controls** ............................................ 607.2.1.2

### DESIGN PROFESSIONAL .................................................. 105.4.2, 105.4.3, 105.4.4, 105.4.5, 107.2.2, 109.2.1

### DETRIMENTAL WASTES ............................................... 302
### DISHWASHING MACHINE ............................................. 409
### DISINFECTION OF POTABLE WATER SYSTEM ............................. 610
### DISTANCE OF TRAP FROM VENT ...................................... Table 909.1
### DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM (See WATER)
- **DRAIN**
  - **Roof** ............................................. 1105
  - **Storm** ............................................. 1106

### DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS
- **Definition** ........................................... 202
- **Values for continuous flow** ................................ 709.3
- **Values for fixtures** .................................. Table 709.1

### DRAINAGE SYSTEM
- **Connection to sewer or private disposal system** ................. 701.2
- **Determining size** .................................... 710.1
- **Fixture units** ....................................... Table 709.1
- **Indirect waste** ...................................... 802
- **Joints** ............................................... 705
- **Materials** ........................................... 702
- **Material detrimental to** ................................ 302
- **Obstructions** ........................................ 706.2
- **Offset sizing** ........................................ 711
- **Provisions for future fixtures** ................................ 710.2
- **Sizing** ............................................... Table 710.1(1), Table 710.1(2)
- **Slope of piping** ..................................... Table 704.1
- **Sumps and ejectors** ................................... 712

### EJECTORS
- **EJECTOR CONNECTION** .................................... 712.3.5

### ELEVATOR SHAFT ..................................................... 301.6

### EMPLOYEE FACILITIES ............................................... 403
### ENGINEERED DESIGN, ALTERNATIVE .................................. 316
### EXCAVATION ...................................................... 306
### EXISTING BUILDING PLUMBING SYSTEMS ................................ 102.2

### F
- **FACILITIES, TOILET** ........................................ 403
- **FAMILY AND ASSISTED USE** ................................ 403.1.2, 403.2.1
- **FAUCETS** ............................................. 424
- **FEES** ................................................... 106.6
- **FERRULES (See CAULKING FERRULES)** ............................ 425.3.1

### FITTINGS
- **Drainage system** ....................................... 706
- **Approved standards** .................................. Table 605.5, Table 702.4

### FIXTURE CALCULATIONS ............................................... 403.1.1
### FIXTURE FITTINGS ............................................... 424
### FIXTURE LOCATION ................................................ 405.3.1
### FIXTURE TRAPS
- Acid-resisting ............................................ 1002.9
- Building .................................................... 1002.6
- Design of ................................................... 1002.2
- For each fixture .......................................... 1002.1
- Prohibited ................................................... 1002.3
- Seals ......................................................... 1002.4
- Seal protection ............................................ 1002.4.1
- Setting and protection ................................... 1002.7
- Size .......................................................... 1002.5

### FIXTURE UNITS, DRAINAGE
- **Definition** ........................................... 202
- **Values for continuous flow** ................................ 709.3
- **Values for fixtures** .................................. Table 709.1

### FIXTURES (See PLUMBING FIXTURES)

### FEES
- **Table 301.6** ........................................... 301.6
- **Table 909.1** ........................................... 909.1

### INDEX

---

**2018 NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE**

---

Copyright © 2018 ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by David Schaeffer (dasafer@psych.com). I Order Number w105x64463 on Jul 17, 2018 12:43:31 PM pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further reproduction or distribution authorized. Single use only, copying and networking prohibited. ANY UNAUTHORIZED REPRODUCTION OR DISTRIBUTION IS A VIOLATION OF THE FEDERAL COPYRIGHT ACT AND THE LICENSE AGREEMENT, AND SUBJECT TO CIVIL AND CRIMINAL PENALTIES THEREUNDER.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FLOOD LEVEL RIM</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Design flood elevation</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flood hazard area</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flood hazard resistance</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOOR DRAINS</td>
<td>412, Table 709.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOOR DRAINS, EMERGENCY</td>
<td>202, Table 709.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOOR FLANGES</td>
<td>405.4.1, 405.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOW RATES</td>
<td>604.3, Table 604.3, Table 604.4, 604.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLUSHING DEVICES</td>
<td>420.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual</td>
<td>420.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flush tanks</td>
<td>425.3, 604.3, 604.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flushometer tanks</td>
<td>425.2, 604.3, 604.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flushometer valves</td>
<td>425.2, 604.3, 604.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOOD HANDLING DRAINAGE</td>
<td>802.1.1, 802.1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOOD WASTE DISPOSER</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOOTBATHS</td>
<td>423.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOOTINGS, PROTECTION OF</td>
<td>307.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FREEZING, PROTECTION OF</td>
<td>608.14.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BACKFLOW DEVICES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FREEZING, PROTECTION OF</td>
<td>305.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIPES</td>
<td>903.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FROST CLOSURE</td>
<td>704.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE FIXTURES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GALVANIZED STEEL PIPE</td>
<td>Table 605.3, Table 605.4, 605.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GARBAGE CAN WASHERS</td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GARBAGE DISPOSALS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(See FOOD WASTE DISPOSER)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GENERAL REGULATIONS</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conflicts</td>
<td>301.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection to plumbing system</td>
<td>301.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection to public water and sewer</td>
<td>301.3, 301.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevator machinery rooms</td>
<td>301.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health and safety</td>
<td>108.7, 108.7.1, 108.7.2, 108.7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Materials detrimental</td>
<td>302, 302.1, 302.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piping sizes indicated</td>
<td>301.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection of pipes</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rodentproofing</td>
<td>304, 304.1, 304.2, 304.3, 304.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleeves</td>
<td>305.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strains and stresses in pipe</td>
<td>305.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toilet facilities for workers</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trenching, excavation and backfill</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washroom requirements</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRAY WATER (See also ALTERNATE ON-SITE NONPOTABLE WATER)</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>608.8.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color of distribution piping</td>
<td>608.8.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flushing</td>
<td>1302.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsurface irrigation</td>
<td>1402.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trap priming</td>
<td>1002.4.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GREASE INTERCEPTORS</td>
<td>202, 1003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved standards</td>
<td>1003.3.4, 1003.3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity</td>
<td>Table 1003.3.4.1, 1003.4.2.1, 1003.4.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge</td>
<td>1003.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravity-type</td>
<td>1003.3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydromechanical-type</td>
<td>1003.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>1003.3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required</td>
<td>1003.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUTTERS</td>
<td>1106.6, Table 1106.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HANGERS AND SUPPORTS</td>
<td>308.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachment to buildings</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Material</td>
<td>308.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seismic</td>
<td>308.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spacing</td>
<td>Table 308.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEALTH AND SAFETY</td>
<td>101.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEALTH CARE PLUMBING</td>
<td>422, 609, 713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEAT EXCHANGERS</td>
<td>608.16.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORIZONTAL PIPE</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slope for drainage</td>
<td>704.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOT WATER</td>
<td>422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circulating system</td>
<td>202, 607.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demand recirculation water system</td>
<td>607.2.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow of hot water to fixtures</td>
<td>607.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heaters and tanks</td>
<td>Chapter 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipe insulation</td>
<td>607.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pumps for water heaters</td>
<td>607.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recirculating systems with thermostatic mixing valves</td>
<td>607.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply system</td>
<td>607</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature maintenance (Heat trace)</td>
<td>607.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOUSE TRAP (See BUILDING TRAP)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDIRECT WASTE</td>
<td>802</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air gap or break</td>
<td>802.2.1, 802.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food handling establishment</td>
<td>802.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receptors</td>
<td>802.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Special wastes ........................................ 803
Waste water temperature ......................... 702.5
Where required ....................................... 802.1

INDIVIDUAL VENT ..................................... 910

INSPECTION ........................................... 107.1
Final .................................................. 107.1
Reinspection .......................................... 107.4.3
Required ............................................ 107.2
Rough-in ............................................. 107.2
Scheduling of ....................................... 107.2
Testing ............................................... 107.4

INSPECTOR (See CODE OFFICIAL) ................... 505, 607.5

INTERCEPTORS AND SEPARATORS ................. 1003
Access to ............................................ 1003.10
Approved standards ................................ 1003.3.4, 1003.3.6
Bottling establishments .............................. 1003.7
Capacity of grease interceptors .................. Table 1003.3.4.1
Clothes washers ..................................... 1003.6
Connection of discharge ............................ 1003.3.7
Definition ............................................ 202
Fats, oils and greases systems ..................... 1003.3.6
Not required ........................................ 1003.3.3
Oil and flammable liquids separators ............ 1003.4
Rate of flow control for grease interceptors .... 1003.3.4.2
Required ............................................ 1003.1
Slaughterhouses ..................................... 1003.8
Venting .............................................. 905.4, 1003.9

IRRIGATION, LAWN ................................. 608.16.5
ISLAND FIXTURE VENT .............................. 916

J

JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS ......................... 605, 705
ABS plastic pipe ..................................... 605.10, 705.2
Between different materials ....................... 605.24, 705.16
Brass pipe ............................................ 605.11, 705.3
Brazed joints ......................................... 605.11.1, 605.13.1, 605.14.1, 705.4.1, 705.6.1, 705.7.1
Cast-iron pipe ........................................ 705.4
Caulked joint ......................................... 705.4.1, 705.8.1
Concrete pipe ....................................... 705.5
Copper or copper-alloy pipe ....................... 605.13, 705.6
Copper or copper-alloy tubing .................... 605.14, 705.7
CPVC plastic pipe ................................... 605.15, 605.16
Expansion joints .................................... 308.8
Galvanized steel pipe ............................... 605.18
Grooved and shouldered ............................ 605.14.3, 605.18.3, 605.22.2, 605.23.3
Mechanical joints .................................. 605, 705

Polyethylene plastic pipe or tubing (PE) ......... 605.19
Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) .... 605.25
Polypropylene plastic pipe or tubing (PP) ....... 605.20
Prohibited ........................................... 605.9, 707
PVC plastic pipe ..................................... 605.22, 705.11
Slip joints ............................................ 405.8, 1002.2
Soldered joints ....................................... 605.13.3, 605.14.6, 705.6.3, 705.7.3
Solvent cementing ................................... 605.23
Threaded .............................................. 605.10.3, 605.11.3, 605.13.4, 605.15.3, 605.18.1, 605.22.4, 705.2.3, 705.3.3, 705.6.4, 705.9.1, 705.11.3
Vitrified clay pipe .................................... 705.12
Welded ................................................ 605.11.4, 605.13.5, 605.23.2, 705.3.4, 705.6.5

K

LABELING, BUNDLED WATER PIPING .............. 606.7
LAUNDRIES (See CLOTHES WASHERS) .............. 415
LAUNDRY TRAY ......................................... 415
LAUNDRY TUB (See LAUNDRY TRAY) ................ 416
LEADERS ................................................ 1106
LIGHT AND VENTILATION REQUIREMENT ........ 310.1
LOADING, DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS ............ Table 709.1

LOCATION .............................................. 155
Anchorage for drain piping ....................... 308.7
Drinking fountain ................................... 403.5
Fixtures .............................................. 405.3
Fixtures, obstruction ................................ 405.3.3
Potable water supply tanks ....................... 606.5.8
Prohibited, drinking fountain ..................... 410.5
Secondary roof drain discharge .................... 1108.2
Storage tanks ....................................... 1302.7.1, 1303.10.1
Subsoil irrigation ................................... 1402.3
Toilet facilities, malls ............................. 403.3.4
Toilet facilities, other than in malls ............. 403.3.3
Toilet room and kitchen .......................... 403.3.2
Trench ................................................ 307.5
Valves ............................................... 606.1, 606.2
Vent terminal ....................................... 903.5
Water heater ....................................... 501.4
Wells ................................................. 608.7.1
INDEX

M
MANHOLES .................................... 708.1.1, 708.1.7
MANIFOLDS .................................... 604.10
MATERIAL
Above-ground drainage and vent pipe ................................ Table 702.1
Alternative ........................................ 105.2
Approval .......................................... 107.2.3
Building sewer pipe .................................... 702.3
Building storm sewer pipe .................................. 1102.4
Chemical waste system ..................................... 702.6
Fittings ........................................... Table 605.5, Table 702.4,
.............................................. Table 1102.7
Identification .................................. 303.1
Joints ............................................. 605, 705
Roof drains ........................................ 1105
Sewer pipe ........................................ 702.3
Standards .......................................... Chapter 15
Storm drainage pipe ..................................... Table 1102.4
Subsoil drain pipe ...................................... 1102.5
Underground building drainage and vent pipe ................. 702.2
Vent pipe ........................................ 702.1, 702.2
Water distribution pipe .................................... Table 605.4
Water service pipe ..................................... Table 605.3
MATERIAL, FIXTURES
Quality ............................................. 402.1
Special use ......................................... 402.2
MATERIAL, SPECIAL
Caulking ferrules ..................................... 705.18
Cleanout plugs ....................................... 708.1.6
Sheet copper ......................................... 402.3
Sheet lead .......................................... 402.4
Soldering bushings ..................................... 705.19
MECHANICAL JOINTS .................................. 605, 705
MEDICAL GAS, NONFLAMMABLE .......... 1202.1

N
NONPOTABLE WATER REUSE SYSTEMS ................. 1302
NONPOTABLE WATER SYSTEMS
Identification ......................................... 608.8
Disinfection ......................................... 1301.2.1
Filtration ........................................... 1301.2.2
Piping color ......................................... 608.2.1
Protection of potable water from ...................... 608.1, 1301.5
Requirements for .................................... Chapter 13
Signage ........................................... 1301.3
Tanks ............................................... 1301.9

O
OFFSETS
Definitions ......................................... 202
Drainage ........................................... 711
Venting ............................................ 907
OPENINGS
Through walls or roofs .............................. 304.5, 305.5, 315
OVERFLOW ..................................... 407.2

P
PARKING GARAGE .................................. 403.3, 1002.1
PAN, WATER HEATER ................................ 504.7
PARTITIONS ....................................... 405.3.4, 405.3.5
PEDICURE BATHS .................................. 423.3
PERMIT
Application for ..................................... 106.3
Conditions of ....................................... 106.5
Fees ................................................. 106.6
Suspension of ....................................... 106.5.5
PENETRATIONS .................................... 315
PIPE BURSTING .................................... 717
PIPING
Construction documents ............................ 105.4.4
Drainage, horizontal slope ........................ Table 704.1
Drainage piping installation ......................... 704
Drainage piping offset, size ......................... 710, 711
Joints ............................................... 605, 705
Rehabilitation of the inside of ....................... 601.5
PIPING PROTECTION
Backfilling .......................................... 306.3
Corrosion .......................................... 305.1
Expansion and contraction .......................... 305.2
Exposed locations .................................... 305.6
Foundation wall ..................................... 305.3
Freezing ............................................ 305.6
Penetration by fasteners .............................. 305.6
Structural settlement ................................ 305.2
Tunneling .......................................... 306.4
PLUMBING FACILITIES ......................... 403
PLUMBING FIXTURES ................................ 404
Accessible .......................................... 404
Automatic clothes washers ......................... 406
Bidet .............................................. 408
Clearances .......................................... 404.2, 405.3
Definition .......................................... 202
Dishwashing machine ............................... 409
Drainage fixture unit values ......................... Table 709.1
Drinking fountain ................................... 202, 410
Emergency showers .................................. 411
Eyewash stations ........................................ 411
Floor sinks ........................................... 427
Floor and trench drains ............................ 412
Food waste disposer ................................. 413
Future fixtures ........................................ 704.4
Garbage can washer ................................. 414
Hospital ................................................ 422
Installation .......................................... 405
Joints at wall or floor ............................... 405.5
Kitchen sink .......................................... 418
Laundry .................................................. 415
Laundry tub (See Laundry tray) ......... 416
Lavatories ................................................ 416
Minimum number of ................................. 403.1
Materials ............................................. 402.1
Ornamental pools ..................................... 423.1
Quality ................................................ 402.1
Separate facilities ................................. 403.2
Setting ................................................ 405.3
Showers ............................................... 417
Sinks .................................................... 418
Slop sinks ............................................ 418
Urinals ................................................. 419
Water closets ........................................ 420
Water coolers ..................................... 202, 410
Water supply protection .................. 608

PLUMBING INSPECTOR (See CODE OFFICIAL)

PNEUMATIC EJECTORS ................................. 712

POLYETHYLENE PIPE OR TUBING

PE-AL-PE approved standards .......... Table 605.3,
Table 605.4
PEX approved standards ................. Table 605.3,
Table 605.4
PEX-AL-PEX approved standards ....... Table 605.3,
Table 605.4
(PE-RT) approved standards ............ Table 605.3,
Table 605.4

POLYPROPYLENE (PP) PIPE OR TUBING

Approved standards .......... Table 605.3, Table 605.4

POTABLE WATER, PROTECTION OF ........ 608

PRESSURE OF WATER DISTRIBUTION .... 604.6

PROHIBITED

Joints and connections ................. 605.9, 707
Traps ............................................. 1002.3

PROTECTION OF POTABLE WATER .......... 603.2, 608

PUMPING EQUIPMENT ......................... 712

PVC PIPE ........................................ 712

Table 605.3, Table 605.4,
Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3

Q

QUALITY OF WATER

General ............................................. 608.1

QUICK CLOSING VALVES (See WATER HAMMER)

R

RAINWATER COLLECTION AND
DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS ....................... 1303

RAINWATER DRAINAGE ............................ Chapter 11

RECLAIMED WATER SYSTEMS ................. 1304

REDUCED PRESSURE PRINCIPLE

BACKFLOW PREVENTER

Definition ........................................... 202
Periodic inspections .......................... 312.10
Standard .................................. Table 608.1
Where required ............................. 608.15.2, 608.16.2, 608.16.4,
608.16.4.1, 608.16.5, 608.16.6

REFERENCED STANDARDS ............. Chapter 15

RELIEF VALVES .................................. 504.4, 504.5, 504.6

Definition ........................................ 202

RELIEF VENT ...................................... 906.2, 908, 914.4

Definition ........................................ 202

ROOF DRAINS ......................................

Definition ........................................ 202

Rating for water height above .......... 1101.7, 1105.2

ROUGH-IN INSPECTION ....................... 107.2

S

SANITARY SEWER (See BUILDING SEWER)

SANITARY TEES .................................... 706.3

SCREWED JOINTS

(See JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS)

SEPARATE FACILITIES ....................... 403.2

SERVICE SINKS ................................. Table 403.1, 418

SEWER (See BUILDING SEWER)

SHEET COPPER .................................. 402.3

SHEET LEAD ........................................ 402.4

SHAMPOO SINKS ................................. 423.3

SHOWER LINER

Material ........................................... 312.9
Testing ......................................... 417.5.2

SHOWER LINER

Approved for prefabricated types ....... 417.1
Compartment size ......................... 417.4
Required number ......................... 403.1
Wall protection for .......... 417.4.1
Water supply riser for ............. 417.2

SILL COCK ........................................ 424, 608.15.4.2
INDEX

SINGLE STACK VENT SYSTEM ............................................ 917
SINKS ........................................................................ 418
SIPHONIC ROOF DRAINAGE SYSTEMS ................................. 1107
SIZING
  Drainage system .......................................................... 710
  Fixture drain ............................................................... 709
  Fixture water supply .................................................... 604.5
  Vent system ............................................................... 906
  Water distribution system ............................................. 604
  Water service ............................................................. 603.1
SLAUGHTERHOUSES .................................................... 1003.8
SLEEVES ...................................................................... 305.3
SLIP JOINTS (See JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS) .................. 705.19
SOLDERING BUSHINGS .................................................... 423
SOLVENT CEMENTING (See JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS) ... 803
SPECIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES ......................................... 412
SPECIAL WEIRS ............................................................ 1107
SPECIAL WASTES .......................................................... 803
STAINLESS STEEL PIPE
  Approved standards for drainage systems ...................... Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5, Table 1102.7
  Approved standards for water systems ......................... Table 605.3, Table 605.4
STANDARDS (See REFERENCED STANDARDS)
STANDBY DRAIN .......................................................... 802.3.3
STEEL PIPE (See also MATERIAL)
  Galvanized, approved standards ................................. Table 605.4
  Stainless, approved standards ................................. Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 702.5, Table 702.6, Table 702.7
STORM DRAINS PIPE ................................................... 422.9
STORM DRAINS
  Building size ............................................................. 1106.1
  Building subdrains ..................................................... 1112.1
  Building subsoil drains ............................................. 1111.1
  Conductors and connections ...................................... 1104
  Definition .................................................................. 202
  General ..................................................................... 1101
  Prohibited drainage .................................................. 1101.3
  Roof drains ............................................................. 1102.6, 1105
  Secondary roof drains ................................................ 1108
  Sizing of conductors, leaders and storm drains ............ 1106
  Sizing of roof gutters .................................................. 1106.6
  Sizing of vertical conductors and leaders ................... 1106.2
  Traps ...................................................................... 1103
  Where required ........................................................ 1101.2
STRAPS (See HANGERS AND SUPPORTS)
  STRUCTURAL SAFETY .................................................. 307, Appendix C
  SUBDRAIN BUILDING ................................................ 1112.1
SUBSOIL DRAIN PIPE ................................................... 1111.1
SUBSOIL LANDSCAPE IRRIGATION SYSTEMS ................. Chapter 14
SUMP VENT ............................................................... 906.5
SUMP PUMP DISCHARGE PIPE .......................................... 712.3.3
SUMPS ....................................................................... 1113
SUPPORTS (See also PIPING PROTECTION) ....................... 308
SWIMMING POOL
  Definition .................................................................. 202
  SWIMMING POOL DRAINAGE ...................................... 802.1.4
  T
TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE RELIEF VALVE ................. 504
TEMPERATURE CONTROL
  Mixing valves ............................................................ 424.3, 424.4, 424.5, 607.2.2, 613.1
TEMPERATURE OF WASTE WATER .................................. 702.5
TEMPERED WATER ........................................................ 202, 607.1.1, 607.1.2
TEST
  Drainage and vent air test ........................................... 312.3
  Drainage and vent final test ........................................ 312.4
  Drainage and vent water test ...................................... 312.2
  Forced sewer test ....................................................... 312.7
  Gravity sewer test ..................................................... 312.6
  Percolation test ........................................................ 1402.2
  Required tests .......................................................... 312.1
  Shower liner .............................................................. 312.19
  Test gauges ............................................................... 312.11
  Test of backflow prevention devices ....................... 312.10
  Test of conductors .................................................... 312.8
THERMAL EXPANSION CONTROL ..................................... 607.3
THREADED JOINTS (See JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS)
TOILET FACILITIES
  Definition .................................................................. 202
  Required ................................................................. 403
  Signs ...................................................................... 403.4
  Travel distance ......................................................... 403.3.3, 403.3.4
  Workers’ .................................................................. 311
TOILET ROOM DOOR LOCKING ........................................ 403.3.6
TOILETS (See WATER CLOSETS) ....................................... 1007
TRAP SEAL PROTECTION ................................................. 1002.4.1
TRAPS
  Acid-resisting ........................................................... 1002.9
  Building ................................................................. 1002.6
  Design ................................................................. 1002.2
  Prohibited types ...................................................... 1002.3
  Seal ................................................................. 1002.4
  Separate for each fixture ........................................... 1002.1
  Size ................................................................. Table 709.1, Table 709.2
TRENCH DRAINS .......................................................... 412
SIGNIFICANT CHANGES TO THE INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING,
MECHANICAL AND FUEL GAS CODES, 2015 EDITION
This must-have guide provides comprehensive, yet practical,
analysis of the critical changes made between the 2012 and
2015 editions of the IPC®, IMC® and IFGC®. Key changes are
identified then followed by in-depth discussion of how the
change affects real-world application.
Features:
✓ A quick summary, detailed illustration, and discussion
accompanies each change
✓ Key insights into the code’s content, meaning and
implications
SOFT COVER  #7202S15
PDF DOWNLOAD  #8950P599

2015 I-CODE AND COMMENTARY SERIES
Each insightful reference contains the complete text of the IPC
or IMC plus expert commentary printed after each code section.
The Code and Commentary is an ideal go-to reference for
effective design, construction and inspection.
2015 IPC CODE AND COMMENTARY
SOFT COVER  #3210S15  I  PDF DOWNLOAD  #872P15
2015 IMC CODE AND COMMENTARY
SOFT COVER  #3310S15  I  PDF DOWNLOAD  #873P15

PLUMBING VENTING: DECODING CHAPTER 9 OF THE 2015 IPC
An in-depth illustrated manual by Master Plumber Bob Scott
dedicated to the IPC venting methods. This heavily illustrated
guide shows correct and incorrect examples of common venting,
horizontal and vertical wet-ventng, combination waste and vent,
circuit venting, single stack venting and more based on the
criteria established in Chapter 9 of the 2015 IPC. It discusses
the nuances of each method in detail and gives many examples
of how and where to use each method.
SOFT COVER  #9208S15
PDF DOWNLOAD  #8950P689

DEWALT PLUMBING CODE REFERENCE, THIRD EDITION
A straightforward, illustrated approach and explains the most
important and commonly used provision in the 2015 IPC. This
valuable reference guide transforms the sometimes complex
jargon frequently associated with the code into clear, real-world
terms.
SOFT COVER  #9211S15

DEWALT HVAC CODE REFERENCE, SECOND EDITION
The IMC is the foundation for providing readers with the
knowledge and skills needed to install or modify HVAC
equipment successfully. Detailed, full-color illustrations help
readers visualize and apply key concepts.
SOFT COVER  #9311S15

2015 WEP™: WATER EFFICIENCY PROVISIONS OF THE 2015
THE INTERNATIONAL GREEN CONSTRUCTION CODE®
Contains water-related provisions extracted from the 2015 IgCC,
2015 IPC Chapter 13 Nonpotable Water Systems, and ASHRAE/
USGBC/IES Standard 189.1-2014. This compilation provides
easy, straightforward implementation for jurisdictions and
project flexibility. It promotes water conservation associated with
both the building and the building site addressing numerous
systems and components. (100 pages)
SOFT COVER  #3770S15
PDF DOWNLOAD  #8950P716

2015 WATER EFFICIENCY PROVISIONS (WEP) OF THE 2015
IgCC® AND COMMENTARY
Contains the complete text of the WEP with expert commentary
printed after each I-Code section.
SOFT COVER  #3771S15
PDF DOWNLOAD  #8950P750
Discover the ICC Assessment Center, Featuring PRONTO™

All certification and testing activities are now available in the ICC Assessment Center, formerly ICC Certification & Testing.

Take the Test at Your Location
Skip the trip to the testing center for your next ICC Certification exam. Instead, take advantage of ICC PRONTO, an industry leading, secure online exam delivery service. The only proctored remote online testing option available for building professional certifications, PRONTO allows you to take ICC Certification exams at your convenience in the privacy of your own home, office or other secure location. Plus, you won’t have to wait days or weeks for exam results, you’ll know your pass/fail status immediately upon completion.

With PRONTO, ICC’s Proctored Remote Online Testing Option, take your ICC Certification exam from any location with high-speed internet access.

With online proctoring and exam security features you can be confident in the integrity of the testing process and exam results.

Plan your exam for the day and time most convenient for you. PRONTO is available 24/7.

Eliminate the waiting period and know your results immediately upon exam completion.

ICC is the first model code organization to offer secured online proctored exams—part of our commitment to offering the latest technology-based solutions to help building and code professionals succeed and advance.

Discover the new ICC Assessment Center, ICC PRONTO and the wealth of certification opportunities available to advance your career: www.iccsafe.org/MeetPRONTO